



# MFC-4820C

brother.

# If you need to call Customer Service

Please complete the following information for future reference:

Model Number: MFC-4820C

Serial Number:\*

Date of Purchase:

Place of Purchase:

\* The serial number is on the back of the unit. Retain this User's Guide with your sales receipt as a permanent record of your purchase, in the event of theft, fire or warranty service.

\_\_\_\_

### Register your warranty on-line at

# www.registermybrother.com

By registering your product with Brother International Corporation, you will be recorded as the original owner of the product. Your registration with Brother:

- may serve as confirmation of the purchase date of your product should you lose your receipt;
- may support an insurance claim by you in the event of product loss covered by insurance; and,
- will help us notify you of enhancements to your product and special offers.

The most convenient and efficient way to register your new product is on-line at www.registermybrother.com

# **Brother numbers**

### IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call the country where you bought the MFC. Calls must be made *from within* that country.

# **Register Your Product**

By registering your product with Brother International Corporation, you will be recorded as the original owner of the product. Your registration with Brother:

- may serve as confirmation of the purchase date of your product should you lose your receipt;
- may support an insurance claim by you in the event of product loss covered by insurance; and,

will help us notify you of enhancements to your product and special offers. Please complete and fax the Brother Warranty Registration And Test Sheet or, for your convenience and most efficient way to register your new product, register on-line at

www.registermybrother.com

# Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs)

The Brother Solutions Center is our one-stop resource for all your Fax Machine/Multi-Function Center needs. You can download the latest software and utilities, read FAQs and troubleshooting tips, and go to the "Solutions" section to learn how to get the most from your Brother product.

# http://solutions.brother.com

You can check here for Brother driver updates.

# For Customer Service

In USA: 1-800-284-4329 (voice) 1-901-379-1215 (fax) 1-800-284-3238 (TTY service for the hearing-impaired) In Canada: 1-877-BROTHER (voice) (514) 685-4898 (fax) (514) 685-6464 (voice) In Montreal

# Service Center Locator (USA only)

For the location of a Brother authorized service center, call 1-800-284-4357.

# Service Center Locations (Canada only)

For the location of a Brother authorized service center, call 1-877-BROTHER.

# Brother fax back system (USA only)

Brother has installed an easy-to-use fax back system, so you can get instant answers to common technical questions and product information for all Brother products. This system is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. You can use and an Index of fax back subjects.

In USA only: 1-800-521-2846 The Brother fax back system number has been preprogrammed on Speed Dial **# 01**.

# Ordering accessories and supplies

For best quality results use only genuine Brother accessories, which are available at most Brother retailers. If you cannot find the accessory you need and you have a Visa, MasterCard, Discover, or American Express credit card, you can order accessories directly from Brother. (In the USA, you can visit us online for a complete selection of the Brother accessories and supplies that are available for purchase.)

In USA:

1-888-879-3232 (voice) 1-800-947-1445 (fax)

http://www.brothermall.com

Description	ltem
Ink Cartridge <black></black>	LC25BK
Ink Cartridge <cyan>(blue)</cyan>	LC25C
Ink Cartridge <magenta>(red)</magenta>	LC25M
Ink Cartridge <yellow></yellow>	LC25Y
Power Protector	QPD120
Telephone Line Cord	LG3077001
Telephone Handset	LE0446011
Handset Curled Cord	LE6681001
Paper Support	LE6522001
Output Paper Support	LE6398001
User's Guide	LE9205001 (English for USA and Canada)
	LE9296001 (French For Canada)
Quick Setup Guide	LE9207001 (English for USA and Canada)
	LE9297001 (French For Canada)
MFL Pro software on CD-ROM	LF0497001 (For CD-ROM Drive)

In Canada: 1-877-BROTHER (voice)

The Multi-Function Link<sup>®</sup> Pro Suite is NOT available on floppy disks.

ii ORDERING ACCESSORIES AND SUPPLIES

### Notice - Disclaimer of Warranties (USA and Canada)

BROTHER'S LICENSOR(S), AND THEIR DIRECTORS, OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES OR AGENTS (COLLECTIVELY BROTHER'S LICENSOR) MAKE NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, REGARDING THE SOFTWARE. BROTHER'S LICENSOR(S) DOES NOT WARRANT, GUARANTEE OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE USE OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF THE SOFTWARE IN TERMS OF ITS CORRECTNESS, ACCURACY, RELIABILITY, CURRENTNESS OR OTHERWISE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE RESULTS AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS ASSUMED BY YOU. THE EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES IS NOT PERMITTED BY SOME STATES IN THE USA AND SOME PROVINCES IN CANADA. THE ABOVE EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL BROTHER'S LICENSOR(S) BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL. INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES (INCLUDING DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION. LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION. AND THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE EVEN IF BROTHER'S LICENSOR HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. BECAUSE SOME STATES IN THE USA AND SOME PROVINCES IN CANADA DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES. THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN ANY EVENT BROTHER'S LICENSOR'S LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ACTUAL DAMAGES FROM ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, AND REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION (WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), PRODUCT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE), WILL BE LIMITED TO \$50.

### **Compilation and Publication Notice**

Under the supervision of Brother Industries Ltd., this manual has been compiled and published, covering the latest product descriptions and specifications.

The contents of this manual and the specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.

Brother reserves the right to make changes without notice in the specifications and materials contained herein and shall not be responsible for any damages (including consequential) caused by reliance on the materials presented, including but not limited to typographical and other errors relating to the publication.

# Brother<sup>®</sup> One Year Limited Warranty and Replacement Service (USA only)

### Who is covered:

- This limited warranty ("warranty") is given only to the original end-use/retail purchaser (referred to in this warranty as "Original Purchaser") of the accompanying product, consumables and accessories (collectively referred to in this warranty as "this Product").
- If you purchased a product from someone other than an authorized Brother reseller in the United States or if the product was used (including but not limited to floor models or refurbished product), prior to your purchase you are not the Original Purchaser and the product that you purchased is not covered by this warranty.

### What is covered:

- This Product includes a Machine and Consumable and Accessory Items. Consumable and Accessory Items include but are not limited to print heads, toner, drums, ink cartridges, print cartridges, refill ribbons, therma PLUS paper and thermal paper.
- Except as otherwise provided herein, Brother warrants that the Machine and the accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items will be free from defects in materials and workmanship, when used under normal conditions.
- This warranty applies only to products purchased and used in the United States.
   For products purchased in, but used outside, the United States, this warranty covers only warranty service within the United States (and does not include shipping outside the United States).

### What is the length of the Warranty Periods:

- Machines: one year from the original purchase date.
- Accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items: 90 days from the original purchase date or the rated life of consumable, whichever comes first.

### What is NOT covered:

This warranty does not cover:

- (1) Physical damage to this Product;
- (2) Damage caused by improper installation, improper or abnormal use, misuse, neglect or accident (including but not limited to transporting this Product without the proper preparation and/or packaging);
- (3) Damage caused by another device or software used with this Product (including

but not limited to damage resulting from use of non Brother<sup>®</sup>-brand parts and Consumable and Accessory Items);

- (4) Consumable and Accessory Items that expired in accordance with a rated life; and,
- (5) Problems arising from other than defects in materials or workmanship.

This limited warranty is VOID if this Product has been altered or modified in any way (including but not limited to attempted warranty repair without authorization from Brother and/or alteration/removal of the serial number).

# What to do if you think your Product is eligible for warranty service:

Report your issue to either our Customer Service Hotline at <u>1-800-284-4329</u> or a Brother Authorized Service Center <u>within</u> the applicable warranty period. Supply Brother or the Brother Authorized Service Center with a copy of your dated bill of sale showing that this Product was purchased within the U.S. For the name of local Brother Authorized Service Center(s), call 1-800-521-2846.

### What Brother will ask you to do:

After contacting Brother or a Brother Authorized Service Center, you may be required to deliver (by hand if you prefer) or send the Product properly packaged, freight prepaid, to the Authorized Service Center together with a photocopy of your bill of sale. You are responsible for the cost of shipping, packing product, and insurance (if you desire). You are also responsible for loss or damage to this Product in shipping.

### What Brother will do:

If the problem reported concerning your Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items is covered by this warranty and if you first reported the problem to Brother or an Authorized Service Center within the applicable warranty period, Brother or its Authorized Service Center will repair or replace the Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items at no charge to you for parts or labor. The decision as to whether to repair or replace the Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items is made by Brother in its sole discretion. Brother reserves the right to supply a refurbished or remanufactured replacement Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items and use refurbished parts

# Brother<sup>®</sup> One Year Limited Warranty and Replacement Service (USA only)

provided such replacement products conform to the manufacturer's specifications for new product/parts. The repaired or replacement Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items will be returned to you freight prepaid or made available for you to pick up at a conveniently located Authorized Service Center.

If the Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items are not covered by this warranty (either stage), you will be charged for shipping the Machine and/or accompanying Consumable and Accessory Items back to you.

The foregoing are your sole (i.e., only) and exclusive remedies under this warranty.

# What happens when Brother elects to replace your Machine:

When a replacement Machine is authorized by Brother, and you have delivered the Machine to an Authorized Service Center, the Authorized Service Center will provide you with a replacement Machine after receiving one from Brother. If you are dealing directly with Brother, Brother will send to you a replacement Machine with the understanding that you will, after receipt of the replacement Machine, supply the required proof of purchase information, together with the Machine that Brother agreed to replace. You are then expected to pack the Machine that Brother agreed to replace in the package from the replacement Machine and return it to Brother using the pre-paid freight bill supplied by Brother in accordance with the instructions provided by Brother. Since you will be in possession of two machines, Brother will require that you provide a valid major credit card number. Brother will issue a hold against the credit card account number that you provide until Brother receives your original Product and determines that your original Product is entitled to warranty coverage. Your credit card will be charged up to the cost of a new Product only if: (i) you do not return your original Product to Brother within five (5) business days; (ii) the problems with your original Product are not covered by the limited warranty: (iii) the proper packaging instructions are not followed and has caused damage to the product; or (iv) the warranty period on your original Product has expired or has not been sufficiently validated with a copy of the proof of purchase (bill of sale). The replacement Machine you receive (even if refurbished or remanufactured) will be covered by the balance of the limited warranty period remaining on the original Product, plus an additional thirty (30) days. You will keep the replacement Machine that is sent to you and your original Machine shall become the property of Brother. **Retain your** original Accessory Items and a copy of the return freight bill, signed by the courier.

### Limitations:

Brother is not responsible for damage to or loss of any equipment, media, programs or data related to the use of this Product. Except for that repair or replacement as described above, Brother shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental or consequential damages or specific relief. Because some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, the above limitation may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY IS GIVEN IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, WRITTEN OR ORAL. WHETHER EXPRESSED RY AFFIRMATION, PROMISE, DESCRIPTION, DRAWING, MODEL OR SAMPLE. ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THIS ONE, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED.

- This Limited Warranty is the only warranty that Brother is giving for this Product. It is the *final expression and the exclusive and only statement* of Brother's obligations to you. It replaces all other agreements and understandings that you may have with Brother or its representatives.
- This warranty gives you certain rights and you may also have other rights that may vary from state to state.
- This Limited Warranty (and Brother's obligation to you) may not be changed in any way unless you and Brother sign the same piece of paper in which we (1) refer to this Product and your bill of sale date, (2) describe the change to this warranty and (3) agree to make that change.

*Important:* We recommend that you keep all original packing materials, in the event that you ship this product.

### BROTHER MULTIFUNCTION CENTER/FACSIMILE MACHINE LIMITED WARRANTY (Canada only)

Pursuant to this limited warranty of 1 year from the date of purchase for labour and parts, Brother International Corporation (Canada) Ltd. ("Brother"), or its Authorized Service Centers, will repair this MFC/Facsimile machine free of charge if defective in material or workmanship. This Limited Warranty does not include cleaning, consumables (including, without limitation, print cartridges, print head, toner and drum) or damage caused by accident, neglect, misuse or improper installation or operation, any damage caused from service, maintenance, modifications, or tampering by anyone other than a Brother Authorized Service Representative, or from the use of supplies or consumable items that are non-Brother products. Operation of the MFC/Facsimile machine in excess of the specifications or with the Serial Number or Rating Label removed shall be deemed abuse and all repairs thereafter shall be the sole liability of the end-user/purchaser. In order to obtain warranty service, the MFC/Facsimile machine must be delivered or shipped freight prepaid by the end user/purchaser to a "Brother" Authorized Service Center, together with your Proof of Purchase in the form of a Sales Receipt.

For laser products: Failure to remove the Toner Cartridge (and Toner Drum Unit on applicable models) during shipping will cause severe damage to the MFC/Facsimile and will VOID the Warranty. (Refer to your Operation Manual for proper packaging.)

For ink-jet products: Do not remove the ink cartridges during shipping. Damage to your print head resulting from packing without the ink cartridges will VOID your warranty. (Refer to your Operation Manual for proper packaging.)

BROTHER DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT ANY WARRANTIES IMPLIED BY LAW CANNOT BE VALIDLY WAIVED.

No oral or written information, advice or representation provided by Brother, its Authorized Service Centers, Distributors, Dealers, Agents or employees, shall create another warranty or modify this warranty. This warranty states Brother's entire liability and your exclusive remedy against Brother for any failure of the MFC/Facsimile machine to operate properly.

Neither Brother nor anyone else involved in the development, production, or delivery of this MFC/Facsimile machine shall be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, consequential, exemplary, or punitive damages, including lost profits, arising from the use of or inability to use the product, even if advised by the end user/purchaser of the possibility of such damages. Since some Provinces do not allow the above limitation of liability, such limitation may not apply to you.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights which vary from Providence to Providence.

Warranty Service is available at Brother Authorized Service Centers throughout Canada. For Technical Support or for the name and location of your nearest Authorized Service Center call 1-877-BROTHER. Within Montreal, please call (514) 685-6464. Internet support: support@brother.ca or browse Brother's Web Site: www.brother.com

Brother International Corporation (Canada) Ltd. 1 Rue Hôtel de Ville Dollard-Des-Ormeaux, QC H9B 3H6



# **Safety Precautions**

# To Use the MFC Safely

Save these instructions for later reference.

# 





- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines. Never touch telephone wires or terminals that are not insulated unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the wall jack. Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm. Never install a telephone jack in a wet location.
- Install equipment with a power cord near a socket-outlet that is easily accessible.
- To reduce the risk of shock or fire, use only a No. 26 AWG or larger telecommunication line cord.
- Do not use a telephone in the vicinity of gas leak to report leak.

# Caution

- Lightning and power surges can damage this product! We recommend that you use a quality surge protection device on the AC power line and on the telephone line, or unplug the lines during a lightning storm.
- Do not use this product near appliances that use water, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Avoid using a telephone other than a cordless type during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.

# **Choosing a Location**

Place your MFC on a flat, stable surface that is free of vibration and shocks, such as a desk. Put the MFC near a telephone jack and a standard, grounded power outlet. Choose a location where the temperature remains between  $50^{\circ}$ F and  $95^{\circ}$ F ( $10^{\circ}$ - $35^{\circ}$ C).

# Caution

- Avoid placing your MFC in a high-traffic area.
- Do not place near heaters, air conditioners, water, chemicals, or refrigerators.
- Do not expose the MFC to direct sunlight, excessive heat, moisture, or dust.
- Do not connect your MFC to electrical outlets controlled by wall switches or automatic timers.
- Disruption of power can wipe out information in the MFC's memory.
- Do not connect your MFC to electrical outlets on the same circuit as large appliances or other Equipment that might disrupt the power supply.
- Avoid interference sources, such as speakers or the base units of cordless phones.



# **Quick Reference Guide**

# Sending Black & White Faxes

# Automatic Transmission

# Sending a fax

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Enter the fax number using the dial pad, Speed Dial or Search.

# 3 Press Fax Start.

The MFC starts scanning the first page.

NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

- 4 Press 2 to begin dialing.
- 5 Press Stop/Exit to cancel.

# Sending more than one page

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Enter the fax number using the dial pad, Speed Dial or Search.
- **3** Press **Fax Start**.

The MFC starts scanning the first page.

NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

- **4** Press **1**.
- Place the next page on the scanner glass.
   Press Menu/Set.

The MFC starts scanning. (Repeat step 4 and 5 for each additional page.)

- 6 Press 2 to begin dialing.
- 7 Press Stop/Exit to cancel.

# Real Time Transmission

You can send faxes in real time.

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 5.
- 3 Press ⊕ to select ON, and then press Menu/Set. —OR—

For the next fax only, press to select NEXT FAX ONLY, and then press Menu/Set.

- For the next fax only, press
   to select ON, and then press Menu/Set.
- **5** Press **1** to select additional settings.

\_\_OR\_\_

Press 2 to fax.

- 6 Enter the fax number.
- 7 Press Fax Start.

# **Receiving Faxes**

# Select Receive Mode

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **1**.
- 2 Press to select FAX ONLY, FAX/TEL, or MANUAL, and then press **Menu/Set**. If you select FAX/TEL, make sure you set Ring Delay and F/T Ring Time. (See Setting the Ring Delay on page 5-3 and Setting the F/T Ring Time (FAX/TEL mode only) on page 5-4.)
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

# **Storing Speed Dial Numbers**

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 3, 1.
- 2 Enter a two-digit Speed Dial number, and then press **Menu/Set**.
- **3** Enter a number (up to 20 digits), and then press **Menu/Set**.
- 4 Enter a name (or leave it blank), and then press Menu/Set.
- 5 Press Stop/Exit.

# **Dialing Operations**

# Speed Dialing

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Search/Speed Dial, press #, and then press the two-digit Speed Dial number.
- 3 Press Fax Start.

# Search/Speed Dial

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Search/Speed Dial and use the dial pad to enter the first letter of the name you are looking for.
- **3** Press to search the memory.
- **4** Press **Fax Start**, when the LCD shows the name you want to call.

# Making Copies

# **Making Copies**

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Using the dial pad, enter the number of copies you want.
- 3 Press Black Copy or Color Copy.

Brother fax back system:

In USA: 1-800-521-2846 Brother Global Web Site:

http://www.brother.com

Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs) and Product Support

http://solutions.brother.com

Brother Accessories & Supplies:

In USA:1-888-879-3232 (voice)

1-800-947-1445 (fax)

http://www.brothermall.com In Canada: 1-877-BROTHER (voice)

# **Table of Contents**

Introduction	1-1
Using this Guide	
Finding information	
Symbols used in this Guide	
Fax Test Sheet and Product Registration	
(USA only)	1-2
On-Line Registration (USA and Canada)	1-2
MFC Part Names and Functions	1-3
MFC-4820C control panel overview	1-6
About fax machines	1-8
Custom features	1-8
Do you have Voice Mail on the phone line?	1-8
Why should there be problems?	
How can you avoid possible problems?	
Fax tones and handshake	
ECM (Error Correction Mode)	
Connecting the MFC	
Connecting an External Telephone	1-11
Connecting an External Telephone Answering	
Device (TAD)	
Sequence	
Connections	1-13
Recording Outgoing Message (OGM)	
on an External TAD	
Special Line Considerations	
Roll Over Phone Lines	
Two-Line Phone System	
Converting Telephone Wall Outlets	1-15
Installing MFC, External Two-Line TAD	
and Two-Line Telephone	
Multi-Line Connections (PBX)	1-1/
If you are Installing the MFC to Work	
with a PBX	
Custom Features on Your Phone Line	1-17

2	Paper	2_1
	About paper	
	Handling and using special paper	
	Recommended paper	
	Paper capacity of the Paper Tray	
	Paper specifications for the Paper Tray	
	Paper capacity of the Output Paper Support	
	Printable area	
	How to load paper and envelopes	
	To load paper or other media	
	To load glossy paper	
	To load envelopes	
_	To load envelopes	2-0
3	On-Screen Programming	3-1
	User-friendly programming	
	Menu table	
	Memory Storage	
	Navigation key	
	Navigatori Koy	
4	Initial setup	4-1
	Getting started	4-1
	Setting the Paper Type	4-1
	Setting the Paper Size	4-2
	Setting the Date and Time	4-2
	Setting the Station ID	4-3
	Entering text	4-4
	Inserting spaces	4-4
	Making corrections	4-4
	Repeating letters	
	Special characters and symbols	4-5
	Setting the Ring Volume	
	Setting the Beeper Volume	
	Setting the Speaker Volume	
	Setting the Handset Volume	4-7
	Choosing the Handset Volume	
	(For Volume Amplify)	
	Setting Volume Amplify	
	Turning on Automatic Daylight Savings Time	
	Setting the LCD Contrast	
	Setting Tone and Pulse dialing mode	4-10

# 5 s

Setup Receive	5-1
Basic receiving operations	5-1
Choosing the Receive Mode	5-1
To select or change your Receive Mode	5-2
Setting the Ring Delay	5-3
Setting Toll Saver	5-3
Setting the F/T Ring Time (FAX/TEL mode only)	5-4
Setting the FAX/TEL Announcement	5-4
Easy Receive	5-5
Printing a reduced incoming fax	
(Auto Reduction)	
Receiving a fax at the end of a conversation	5-6
Advanced receiving operations	5-7
Operation from extension telephones	5-7
For FAX/TEL mode only	5-7
Using a cordless external handset	5-8
Changing the remote codes	
Printing a fax from the memory	5-8
Polling	5-9
Setting up Polling Receive	
Setting up Sequential Polling Receive	
Telephone services	
Distinctive Ring	5-10
What does your telephone company's	
'Distinctive Ring' do?	
What does Brother's 'Distinctive Ring' do?	
Do you have Voice Mail?	
Before you choose the ring pattern to register	5-11
Registering the Distinctive Ring pattern	
Very important	
Turning off the Distinctive Ring	
Caller ID	
Viewing Caller ID List	
Printing Caller ID List	5-14
Setup Send	
How to Dial	
Manual Dialing	
Speed Dialing	
Search	
How to Fax	
Automatic Transmission	
Faxing A4 size originals from the scanner glass	
Out of Memory message	6-3

6 s

Manual Transmission	
Sending a fax at the end of a conversation	6-4
Basic sending operations	6-5
Sending faxes using multiple settings	6-5
Contrast	6-5
Fax resolution	6-6
Color fax transmission	6-7
Manual and automatic fax redial	6-7
Dual Access (Not available for color faxes)	6-8
Real Time Transmission	6-9
Checking job status	6-10
Canceling a job while scanning, dialing and	
sending the original	6-10
Canceling a scheduled job	
Advanced sending operations	
Broadcasting (Not available for color faxes)	6-11
Overseas Mode	
Delayed Fax (Not available for color faxes)	6-14
Delayed Batch Transmission	
(Not available for color faxes)	6-15
Setting up Polled Transmission	
(Not available for color faxes)	6-15
uto Dial numbers and Dialing options	7-1
Storing numbers for easy dialing	
Storing Speed Dial numbers	
Changing Speed Dial numbers	
Setting up Groups for Broadcasting	
Dialing options	
Access codes and credit card numbers	7-4
Pause	7-5
Fax Redial	7-5
Tone or Pulse	
Telephone (Voice) Operation	7-6
How to Dial	7-6
Manual Dialing	7-6
Speed Dialing	7-6
Speed Dialing Search	
	7-7
Search	7-7 7-7

0		
)	Remote fax options	8-1
	Setting Fax Storage	8-1
	Backup Print	8-1
	This is a safety feature in case the power goes off	
	so you won't lose your messages	8-1
	Fax Forwarding/Paging	
	Programming a Fax Forwarding number	
	Programming your pager number	
	Setting your remote access code	
	Remote retrieval	
	Using your remote access code	
	Remote commands	
	Retrieving fax messages	
	Changing your Fax Forwarding number	
-		
9	Message Center	9-1
	Message Center mode	
	Setting up the Message Center	
	Recording Message Center Outgoing Message	
	Listening to Outgoing Message (OGM)	
	Erasing Outgoing Message (OGM)	
	Activating Message Center mode	
	Message indicator	
	Playing voice messages	
	Printing a Fax Message	
	Erasing messages	
	To Erase Voice Messages Individually	9-5
	To erase messages all at once	
	Setting Maximum Time for incoming messages	
	ICM Recording Monitor	
	Recording a conversation	
	Record FAX/TEL Outgoing Announcement	
	(F/T OGM)	9-7
0	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
0	Printing reports	. 10-1
	MFC settings and activity	. 10-1
	Customizing the Transmission Verification Report	
	Setting the Fax Activity Report Interval	
	Printing reports	
	To print a report	

# 

Making copies11-1
Using the MFC as a copier
Single or multiple copies
Out of memory message
Using Copy Options key (Temporary Settings)
No. of Copies
Quality
Enlarge/Reduce
Paper Type
Paper Size
Brightness11-8
Page Layout
Changing the default copy settings
Copy Quality11-12
Brightness11-12
Contrast11-12
Color Adjustment11-13
Legal limitations11-14
_
Walk-Up PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> 12-1
Introduction12-1
PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> requirements
Basic flow12-2
Getting started12-3
Printing the Index (Thumbnails)12-5
Printing images12-6
Changing the settings for printing images
Menu selections12-8
Number of Copies12-8
Paper Type
Paper and Print Size12-9
Print Quality12-12
Brightness
Color enhancement (True2Life <sup>®</sup> )
DPOF printing
Changing the default settings
Print Quality
Print Size
Brightness12-16
Contrast
Color enhancement (True2Life <sup>®</sup> )12-17
Understanding the Error Messages
Using PhotoCanture Center <sup>™</sup> from your DC 12.12
Using PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> from your PC12-18 Using PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> for scanning originals12-18
Using FilotoCapture Center for scanning originals 12-18

11

12		
	Using the MFC as a printer	
	Using the Brother MFC-4820C printer driver	
	Features	
	Choosing the right type of paper	
	How to print your document	
	Simultaneous printing and faxing	
	Clearing data from the memory	
	Checking the Print Quality	13-3
11		
14	Printer driver settings	
	Printer driver settings	
	How to access the printer driver settings	
	Basic tab	
	Media Type	
	Quality	
	Bi-Directional Printing	
	Paper Size	
	Page Layout	
	Border Line	
	Orientation	
	Copies	
	Collate	
	Reverse Order	
	Near Edge Print	
	Advanced tab	
	Color	
	Color/Grayscale	
	Image Type	
	Custom Image Type	
	Halftone Pattern	
	Color Enhancement (True2Life <sup>®</sup> )	
	Scaling	
	Watermark	
	In background	14-14
	In Outline Text	
	(Window <sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional/XP Only)	14-14
	Print Watermark	
	Watermark Style	14-15
	Device Options	
	Print Date & Time	
	Quick Print Setup	
	Support tab	14-18
	Brother Solutions Center	
	Web Update	14-18
	Check Setting	

15	How to scan using Windows <sup>®</sup> 15-1
	Scanning a document
	(For Windows <sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me and 2000 Professional)15-1
	TWAIN compliant
	How to access the Scanner
	Scanning a document into the PC
	Scanning a whole page15-3
	PreScanning to crop a portion you want to scan 15-4
	Settings in the Scanner window15-6
	Scan (Image Type)15-6
	Resolution15-6
	Scan Type15-7
	Brightness15-7
	Contrast
	Document Size15-8
	Scanning a document (For Windows <sup>®</sup> XP only)15-10
	WIA compliant15-10
	How to access the scanner15-10
	Scanning a document15-11
	PreScanning to crop a portion you
	want to scan15-12
	Brother Scanner Utility15-14
	Using the scan key15-15
	Scan to E-mail15-16
	Scan Image15-16
	Scan/OCR15-17
	Scan to File15-17
	Scan to Card15-18
	Changing the default color file format
	Using ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> PaperPort <sup>®</sup> and TextBridge <sup>®</sup> OCR 15-20
	Viewing items
	Organizing your items in folders
	Quick links to other applications
	ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> TextBridge <sup>®</sup> OCR lets you convert
	image text in to text you can edit
	You can Import items from other applications 15-23
	You can Export items in other formats
	Exporting an image file15-24

# Using the Brother Control Center for

Windows® 98/98SE/Me/2000 Professional	16-1
Brother MFL-Pro Control Center	16-1
AutoLoad the Brother Control Center	16-2
How to turn off AutoLoad	16-2
Brother Control Center features	16-3
Auto Configuration	16-3
Scan to key operations	16-4
Scan to File	16-5
To access Scan to File Configuration screen	16-5
Scanner Settings	16-5
Destination folder	16-6
Scan to E-mail	16-7
To access Scan to E-mail Configuration screen.	16-7
Scanner Settings	16-7
E-mail application	16-8
Send to Options	16-8
Scan to OCR (Word Processor)	16-9
To access Scan to OCR Configuration screen	16-9
Scanner Settings	16-9
Word Processor	16-10
Scan Image	16-11
To access Scan to Image Configuration screen.	16-11
Scanner Settings	
Target Application	16-11

17	Using the Windows <sup>®</sup> -Based Brother SmartUI	
	Control Center	17-1
	Brother SmartUI Control Center	17-1
	AutoLoad the Brother Control Center	17-2
	How to turn off Auto Load	17-2
	Brother Control Center features	
	Auto Configuration	17-4
	Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button	
	Configuration	17-5
	Scan To E-mail	17-6
	Scan To File	17-7
	Scan To Image	17-8
	Scan To OCR	
	Software Section	17-12
	Scan	17-13
	Сору	
	Fax	17-14
	Custom	17-14

Scan to File	17-15
Scan to E-mail	17-17
File attachments	17-19
Scanner settings	17-20
Scan to OCR (Word Processing program)	17-21
Scan to Graphics application	
(example: Microsoft Paint)	17-23
Сору	
Fax setting (PC-Fax using the Brother Fax Driver)	17-27
FAX settings	
Custom: User-defined buttons	17-30
Customizing a user-defined button	17-30
1. Select the Scan Action	
2. Select Configuration for the Scan Type	17-31
3. Select Scan Settings.	
·	
Using MFC Remote Setup	18-1
MFC Remote Setup	
Using PC-FAX	19-1
PC-FAX sending	19-1
Setting up user information	19-2
Sending setup	
Outside line access	19-3
Include header	19-3
Address Book file	19-3
User interface	19-4
Simple style	
Facsimile style	
Speed Dial setup	
The Address Book	
Setting up a Member in the Address Book	
Setting up a Group for Broadcasting	
Editing Member information	
Deleting a Member or Group	
Exporting the Address Book	
Importing to the Address Book	
Setting up a Cover Page	
You can enter information in each field	
Sending a file as a PC-FAX using	
the Facsimile style	19-14
Redial	
Sending a file as a PC-FAX using	
the Simple style	19-15

I	20	
---	----	--

Using the PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> from your PC	20-1
Introduction	20-1
Using ArcSoft <sup>®</sup> PhotoPrinter <sup>®</sup> 4	20-3
Overview of basic steps	20-3
Using your MFC with a Macintosh®	
Setting up your USB-equipped Apple <sup>®</sup> Macintosh <sup>®</sup> G3	,
G4 or iMac <sup>™</sup> or iBook <sup>™</sup> with Mac OS 8.6-9.2 or	
Mac OS X 10.1/10.2.1 or greater	21-1
Using the Brother printer driver with your Apple <sup>®</sup>	
Macintosh <sup>®</sup> (OS 8.6-9.2)	21-2
Using the Brother Printer Driver with Your Apple®	
Macintosh <sup>®</sup> (OS X 10.1/10.2.1 or greater)	
Choosing page setup options	
Printing a document	
Choosing printing options	
Sending a fax from your Macintosh <sup>®</sup> application	
Setting up your Address Book	
Adding a new Member	
Adding a new Group	21-9
Using the Brother TWAIN scanner driver with your	
${\sf Macintosh}^{\scriptscriptstyle f B}$ (For Mac OS 8.6-9.2 and OS X 10.2.1	
or greater)	
Accessing the scanner	
Scanning an image into your Macintosh <sup>®</sup>	
Scanning a whole page	
PreScanning an image	
Settings in the Scanner window	
Image	
Scanning Area	
Business Card Size	
Adjusting the Image	
Color Sync Dialog	
Scanner Profile	.21-19
MFC Remote Setup	
(Mac OS 10.1/10.2.1 or greater)	21-20
Using the PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> from a Macintosh <sup>®</sup>	21-21
Using ArcSoft <sup>®</sup> PhotoPrinter <sup>®</sup> 4	
Overview of basic steps	.21-22

22	Important information	22-1
	Standard telephone and FCC Notices	
	These notices are in effect on models sold	
	and used in the United States only	
	Federal Communications Commission (FCC)	
	Declaration of Conformity (USA only)	
	Important	
	Industry Canada Compliance Statement	
	(Canada only)	22-4
	Important safety instructions	
	Trademarks	
23	Troubleshooting and routine maintenance	23-1
	Troubleshooting	
	Error Messages	
	Printer Jam or Paper Jam	
	If you are having difficulty with your MFC	
	How to improve print quality	
	Cleaning the print head	
	Print Quality Check	
	Checking the ink volume	
	Packing and shipping the MFC	
	Routine maintenance	
	Cleaning the scanner	
	Replacing the ink cartridges	
C		
G	Glossary	G-1
S	Specifications	S-1
	Product description	
	General	S-1
	Print media	S-2
	Сору	S-2
	Photo Capture Center	S-2
	Fax	S-3
	Scanner	S-4
	Printer	S-4
	Interface	S-4
	Computer Requirements	
	Consumable Items	S-5
	Index	I-1
	Pomoto Potrioval Accoss Card	D 1

I



# Using this Guide

Thank you for buying a Brother multi-function center (MFC). This MFC is simple to use, with LCD screen instructions to guide you through programming it. You can make the most of your MFC by taking a few minutes to read this Guide.

# **Finding information**

All the chapter headings and subheadings are listed in the Table of Contents. You will be able to find information about a specific feature or operation by checking the Index at the back of this Guide.

# Symbols used in this Guide

Throughout this Guide you'll see special symbols alerting you to important warnings, notes and actions. To make things clearer and to help you press the correct keys, we used special fonts and added some of the messages that will appear in the LCD.

Bold	Bold typeface identifies specific keys on the MFC control panel.
Italics	Italicized typeface emphasizes an important point or refers you to a related topic.



Warnings inform you what to do to avoid possible personal injury or damage to the machine.



Notes tell you how you should respond to a situation that may arise or give tips about how the current operation works with other features.



Improper Setup alerts you to devices and operations that are not compatible with the MFC.

# Fax Test Sheet and Product Registration (USA only)

After setting your Station ID, please fill in the Test Sheet included with your MFC and fax it to Brother's Automated Fax Response System as your first transmission. This will check that your MFC is working properly.

To get a response, you must have set up your Station ID.

(See Setting the Station ID on page 4-3.)

## In USA Only: 1-877-268-9575

When your Test Sheet is received, a Confirmation Sheet and Product Registration form will be sent back to your MFC.

Please fill in the form and return it to complete your registration.

# **On-Line Registration (USA and Canada)**

- **1** Insert the MFL Pro Suite CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Click Online Registration to register your product.

# **MFC Part Names and Functions**

# ■ Front view 7 Paper Support 6 Paper Tray 5 Paper Guide 4 Telephone Handset 3 PhotoCapture<sup>™</sup> Media Slot 2 Output Paper Support 1 Output Paper Support Extension

No.	Name	Description
1	Output Paper Support Extension	Pull it out to prevent the printed paper from falling.
2	Output Paper Support	Printed paper comes out here.
3	PhotoCapture <sup>™</sup> Media Slot	Insert your Media Card into the appropriate slot to print a digital photo.
4	Telephone Handset	For telephone calls.
5	Paper Guide	Press and slide it to fit the paper width.
6	Paper Tray	Load paper here.
7	Paper Support	Unfold to support paper.
8	Document Cover	Open to place the original on the scanner glass.
9	Scanner Cover	Open to install an ink cartridge or to remove jammed paper.
10	Scanner Cover Release Lever	Pull to open the Scanner Cover.
11	Control Panel	Use the keys and display to control the MFC.

### Rear View



No.	Name	Description
12	External Telephone Line Jack	Plug in the modular plug on the external telephone line here.
13	Telephone Line Jack	Plug in the modular plug on the telephone line here.
14	USB Interface Connector	Connect the USB Cable here.
15	Handset Jack	Plug in the handset curled cord here.

Internal View (Document Cover Open)



No.	Name	Description
16	Scanner Glass	Put the original to be scanned here.
17	Document Guidelines	Use to center the original on the scanner glass.
18	Document Cover	Open to place the original on the scanner glass.
19	White Film	Clean it for good quality copying and scanning.

■ Internal View (Scanner Cover Open)



No.	Name	Description
20	Machine Window	Use to remove small paper jammed inside the MFC without pulling the tube.
21	Scanner Cover	Open to install ink cartridges or remove jammed paper.
22	Tube	These tubes transfer the ink to the print heads. Pulling the tube can cause damage to the MFC.
23	Ink Cartridge Cover	Open to install the ink cartridges.

# MFC-4820C control panel overview



### Message Center Keys

### On/Off

Let's you activate the Message Center and blinks if you did not play your voice messages.

### Play/Record

Lets you listen to voice messages stored in memory. Also, lets you record telephone calls.

### Erase

Lets you delete voice messages, all fax messages or all messages.

### 2 Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Displays messages on the screen to help you to set up and use your MFC.

### Navigation Key:

# Copy Options Copy Options

You can quickly and easily select temporary settings for copying.

### Photo Capture

Let's you access PhotoCapture<sup>™</sup> Center mode by inserting your media card. After inserting your digital camera's card, press the **Copy Options** to print the thumbnails or digital photos or to temporarily change the settings for digital direct printing.

### Fax Resolution

You can temporarily change the resolution when you send a fax.

### Search/Speed dial

Lets you look up numbers that are stored in the dialing memory. It also lets you dial stored numbers by pressing **#** and a two-digit number.

### 🗩 Volume

When using the speaker or listening to the ring, you can press this key to adjust the volume.



### Menu/Set

Lets you access the Menu to program and store your settings in the MFC.

## $\bigcirc$

Press to scroll forward or backward to a menu selection.

### C

Press to scroll through the menus and options.

### Stop/Exit

Stops a fax, cancels an operation or exits from the menu.

### 4 Telephone keys:

### **Speaker Phone**

Lets you dial telephone and fax numbers and speak to another party without lifting the handset.

### Hold

Lets you place calls on hold.

### **Redial/Pause**

Redials the last number you called. It also inserts a pause in auto dial numbers.

### Microphone

Picks up your voice when you speak to another party using speakerphone.

### 6 Dial Pad

Use these keys to dial telephone and fax numbers and as a keyboard for entering information into the MFC.

The **#** key lets you temporarily switch the dialing mode during a telephone call from Pulse to Tone.

### 6 Scan key:

### Scan to

Lets you scan the next original and select the destination in your computer (such as a word processing, graphics or E-mail application, a Media card or a folder on your computer.)

Copy keys:

### Black Copy

Makes a black-and-white copy.

### **Color Copy**

Makes a full-color copy.

### 8 Fax Start

Starts an operation, such as sending a fax.

# About fax machines

If you've never used an MFC before, it might seem a little mysterious. But you'll soon recognize the unusual fax tones on your phone line, and be able to send and receive faxes easily.

# **Custom features**

# Do you have Voice Mail on the phone line?

If you have Voice Mail on the phone line where you will install your new MFC, there is a strong possibility that Voice Mail and the MFC may conflict with each other while receiving incoming calls.

# Why should there be problems?

Since both the MFC and Voice Mail will pick up the call, after the number of rings you have set, each of them has the ability to keep the other from receiving calls.

For example, if your Voice Mail is set to answer after two rings and your MFC is set to answer after four, your Voice Mail will stop your MFC from receiving faxes.

If you set Voice Mail and the Brother MFC to answer after the same number of rings, there is no way of knowing which one will answer first. It is important to remember that neither Voice Mail nor the MFC can pass the call back to the other after the call has been answered.

# How can you avoid possible problems?

A very good way to avoid problems like the one mentioned, *is to get* a second phone number on your present phone line.

Many people with Voice Mail choose this service, which is called "Distinctive Ring", and they are very satisfied with it. (*See Distinctive Ring* on page 5-10.)

Another way to avoid possible problems is to replace your Voice Mail with an answering machine. Your Brother MFC is designed to work with an answering machine or TAD (telephone answering device).

(See Connecting an External Telephone Answering Device (TAD) on page 1-11.)

# Fax tones and handshake

When someone is sending a fax, the MFC sends fax calling tones (CNG tones). These are quiet, intermittent beeps every 4-seconds. You'll hear them after you dial and press **Fax Start**, and they will continue for about 60 seconds after dialing. During that time, the sending machine must begin the "handshake" with the receiving machine.

Each time you use automatic procedures to send a fax, you are sending CNG tones over the phone line. You'll soon learn to listen for these quiet beeps each time you answer a phone on your fax line, so you will know if you are receiving a fax message.

The receiving fax responds with fax receiving tones, which are loud, chirping sounds. A receiving fax chirps for about 40 seconds over the phone line, and the LCD shows RECEIVING.

If your MFC is set to the FAX ONLY mode, it will answer every call automatically with fax receiving tones. If the other person hangs up, your MFC will continue to send the "chirps" for about 40 seconds, and the LCD continues to show RECEIVING. To cancel the receiving, press **Stop/Exit**.

The fax 'handshake' is the time in which the sending machine's CNG tones and the receiving machines "chirps" overlap. This must be for at least 2 to 4 seconds, so the machines can understand how each is sending and receiving the fax. The handshake cannot begin until the call is answered, and the CNG tones only last for about 60 seconds after the number is dialed. So it is important for the receiving machine to answer the call in as few rings as possible.

When you have an external Telephone Answering Device (TAD) on your fax line, your TAD will decide the number of rings before the call is answered.

Pay special attention to the directions for connecting a TAD in this chapter. (See *Connecting an External Telephone Answering Device (TAD)* on page 1-11.)

# ECM (Error Correction Mode)

The Error Correction Mode (ECM) is a way for the MFC to check a fax transmission while it is in progress. ECM transmissions are only possible between machines that both have this feature. If they do, you may send and receive fax messages that are continuously being checked by the machine.

Your MFC must have enough memory for this feature to work.

# **Connecting the MFC**

# **Connecting an External Telephone**

Your MFC is equipped with a handset that you can use as a regular phone. However, you can also connect a separate telephone (or telephone answering device) directly to your MFC.

Connect the modular plug on the telephone's line cord to the jack labeled EXT. on the back side of the MFC.

Whenever this phone (or TAD) is in use, the LCD shows EXT. TEL IN USE, and, if the fax handset is lifted, an alarm sounds. To disconnect the call on the external phone and switch to the fax, press **Speaker Phone**.

# Connecting an External Telephone Answering Device (TAD)

# Sequence

You may choose to connect an answering device. However, when you have an **external** TAD on the same telephone line as the MFC, the TAD answers all calls and the MFC "listens" for fax calling (CNG) tones. If it hears them, the MFC takes over the call and receives the fax. If it doesn't hear CNG tones, the MFC lets the TAD continue playing your outgoing message so your caller can leave you a voice message.

The TAD must answer within four rings (the recommended setting is two rings). The MFC cannot hear CNG tones until the TAD has answered the call, and with four rings there are only 8 to 10 seconds of CNG tones left for the fax "handshake". Make sure you carefully follow the instructions in this manual for recording your outgoing message. We do not recommend using the toll saver feature on your external answering machine if it exceeds four rings.

If you do not receive all your faxes, you must reset the setting on your external TAD to four rings or less.

### If You Subscribe to your Telephone Company's Distinctive Ring Service:

You may connect an external TAD to a separate wall jack only if you subscribe to your telephone company's Distinctive Ring service, have registered the distinctive ring pattern on your MFC, use that number as a fax number and set your machine's Receive mode to MANUAL. The recommended setting is four rings on the external TAD when you have the telephone company's Distinctive Ring Service.

If You Do Not Subscribe to Distinctive Ring Service: You must plug your TAD into the EXT. jack of your MFC. If your TAD is plugged into a wall jack, both your machine and the TAD will try to control the phone line. (See illustration below.)

**Do not connect a TAD elsewhere on the same phone line** (unless you have the Distinctive Ring service).


#### Connections

The external TAD must be plugged into the back side of the MFC, into the jack labeled EXT. Your MFC cannot work properly if you plug the TAD into a wall jack (unless you are using Distinctive Ring).

- 1 Plug the telephone line cord from the wall jack into the back side of the MFC, in the jack labeled LINE.
- **2** Plug the telephone line cord from your external TAD into the back side of the MFC, in the jack labeled EXT. (Make sure this cord is connected to the TAD at the TAD's telephone line jack, and not its telephone set jack.)
- **3** Set your external TAD to four rings or less. (The MFC's Ring Delay setting does not apply.)
- **4** Record the outgoing message on your external TAD.
- **5** Set the TAD to answer calls.
- 6 Set the Receive Mode to MANUAL. (See Choosing the Receive Mode on page 5-1.)

Make sure the Easy Receive setting is ON.

(See Easy Receive on page 5-5.)

### Recording Outgoing Message (OGM) on an External TAD

Timing is important in recording this message. The message sets up the ways to handle both manual and automatic fax reception.

- Record 5 seconds of silence at the beginning of your message. (This allows your MFC time to listen for the fax CNG tones of automatic transmissions before they stop.)
- **2** Limit your speaking to 20 seconds.
- 3 End your 20-second message by giving your Fax Receive Code for people sending manual faxes. For example: *"After the beep, leave a message or send a fax by pressing*★ 51 and Start."

We recommend beginning your OGM with an initial 5-second silence because the MFC cannot hear fax tones over a resonant or loud voice. You may try omitting this pause, but if your MFC has trouble receiving, then you must rerecord the OGM to include it.

#### **Roll Over Phone Lines**

A roll over phone system is a group of two or more separate telephone lines that pass incoming calls to each other if they are busy. The calls are usually passed down or "rolled over" to the next available phone line in a preset order.

Your MFC can work in a roll over system as long as it is the last number in the sequence, so the call cannot roll away. Do not put the MFC on any of the other numbers; when the other lines are busy and a second fax call is received, the fax call would be transferred to a line that does not have a fax machine. **Your MFC will work best on a dedicated line.** 

#### **Two-Line Phone System**

A two-line phone system is nothing more than two separate phone numbers on the same wall outlet. The two phone numbers can be on separate jacks (RJ11) or combined into one jack (RJ14). Your MFC must be plugged into an RJ11 jack. RJ11 and RJ14 jacks may be equal in size and appearance and both may contain four wires (black, red, green, yellow). To test the type of jack, plug in a two-line phone and see if it can access both lines. If it can, you must separate the line for your MFC. (See *Easy Receive* on page 5-5.)

#### **Converting Telephone Wall Outlets**

There are three ways to convert to an RJ11 jack. The first two ways may require assistance from the telephone company. You can change the wall outlets from one RJ14 jack to two RJ11 jacks. Or, you can have an RJ11 wall outlet installed and slave or jump one of the phone numbers to it.

The third way is the easiest: Buy a triplex adapter. You can plug a triplex adapter into an RJ14 outlet. It separates the wires into two separate RJ11 jacks (Line 1, Line 2) and a third RJ14 jack (Lines 1 and 2). If your MFC is on Line 1, plug the MFC into L1 of the triplex adapter. If your MFC is on Line 2, plug it into L2 of the triple adapter.



# Installing MFC, External Two-Line TAD and Two-Line Telephone

When you are installing an external two-line telephone answering device (TAD) and a two-line telephone, your MFC must be isolated on one line at both the wall jack and at the TAD. The most common connection is to put the MFC on Line 2, which is explained in the following steps. The back of the two-line TAD must have two telephone jacks: one labeled L1 or L1/L2, and the other labeled L2. You will need at least three telephone line cords, the one that came with your MFC and two for your external two-line TAD. You will need a fourth line cord if you add a two-line telephone.

- **1** Place the two-line TAD and the two-line telephone next to your MFC.
- **2** Plug one end of the telephone line cord for your MFC into the L2 jack of the triplex adapter. Plug the other end into the LINE jack on the back side of the MFC.
- 3 Plug one end of the first telephone line cord for your TAD into the L1 jack of the triplex adapter. Plug the other end into the L1 or L1/L2 jack of the two-line TAD.
- 4 Plug one end of the second telephone line cord for your TAD into the L2 jack of the two-line TAD. Plug the other end into the EXT. jack on the left side of the MFC.



You can keep two-line telephones on other wall outlets as always. There are two ways to add a two-line telephone to the MFC's wall outlet. You can plug the telephone line cord from the two-line telephone into the L1+L2 jack of the triplex adapter. Or, you can plug the two-line telephone into the TEL jack of the two-line TAD.

## Multi-Line Connections (PBX)

Most offices use a central telephone system. While it is often relatively simple to connect the machine to a key system or a PBX (Private Branch Exchange), we suggest that you contact the company that installed your telephone system and ask them to connect the MFC for you. It is advisable to have a separate line for the MFC. You can then leave the MFC in FAX mode to receive faxes any time of day or night.

If the MFC is to be connected to a multi-line system, ask your installer to connect the unit to the last line on the system. This prevents the unit from being activated each time a telephone call is received.



As with all fax units, this machine must be connected to a two wire system. If your line has more than two wires, proper connection of the MFC cannot be made.

#### If you are Installing the MFC to Work with a PBX

- 1 It is not guaranteed that the unit will operate correctly under all circumstances with a PBX. Any cases of difficulty should be reported first to the company that handles your PBX.
- 2 If all incoming calls will be answered by a switchboard operator, it is recommended that the Receive Mode be set to MANUAL. All incoming calls should initially be regarded as telephone calls.
- **3** The MFC may be used with either pulse or tone dialing telephone service.

## Custom Features on Your Phone Line

If you have Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Waiting/Caller ID, RingMaster, an answering service, an alarm system or other custom feature on one phone line it may create a problem with the operation of your MFC. (See Custom features on a single line. on page 23-7.)



## About paper

The print quality of your document can be affected by the kind of paper you use in the MFC.

To ensure the best print quality for the settings you've chosen, always set the Paper Type to match the type of paper you load.

You can use plain paper, inkjet paper (coated paper), glossy paper, transparencies and envelopes.

We recommend testing various paper types before purchasing large quantities.

For best results, use the recommended paper.



When you print on inkjet paper (coated paper), transparencies and glossy paper, be sure to select the proper media in the "Basic" tab in the printer driver.

Also avoid stacking by removing each page after it exits the machine to avoid smudging.

## Handling and using special paper

- Store paper in its original packaging, and keep it sealed. Keep the paper flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat.
- The coated side of glossy paper is shiny. Avoid touching the shiny (coated) side. Load glossy paper with the shiny side facing up toward you.
- Avoid touching either side of transparencies, because they absorb water and perspiration easily, and this may cause decreased output quality. Transparencies designed for laser printers/copiers may stain your next document. Use only recommended transparencies.

#### **Recommended paper**



The output quality depends on the paper type and paper brand. Visit us at http://solutions.brother.com and check the latest recommendations for paper that can be used with the MFC-4820C.

#### Paper capacity of the Paper Tray

Paper Type	Paper Size	Number of sheets
Plain Paper	Letter, Executive,	100 of 20 lb
(Cut Sheet)	A4, A5	(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
		up to 0.39 in. (10 mm)
	Legal	50 of 20 lb (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Inkjet Paper	Letter	20
Glossy Paper	Letter	20
Transparencies	Letter	10
Envelopes	DL, COM-10, C5, Monarch	10
Postcard	4" x 6"	30
Index Card	5" x 8"	30

#### Paper specifications for the Paper Tray

Cut Sheet Paper	Plain Paper / Inkjet Paper:
Weight	17 to 32 lb (64 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Glossy Paper: Up to 40 lb (150 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Post card: Up to 45 lb (170 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Index card: Up to 32 lb (120 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Thickness	Plain Paper / Inkjet Paper:
	0.003 to 0.006 in. (0.08 to 0.15 mm)
	Glossy Paper: Up to 0.007 in. (0.18 mm)
	Envelopes: Up to 0.02 in. (0.52mm)
	Post card: Up to 0.009 in. (0.23 mm)
	Index card: Up to 0.006 in. (0.15 mm)

#### Paper capacity of the Output Paper Support

	Up to 30 sheets of 20 lb (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Support	(Transparencies and glossy paper must be
	picked up from the output paper support one
	page at a time to avoid smudging.)

- Do not use paper or envelopes:
  - that are damaged, curled, wrinkled, or irregularly shaped



- that are extremely shiny or highly textured
- that were previously printed by a printer
- that cannot be arranged uniformly when stacked
- that are made with a short grain
- **O** Do not use envelopes:
  - that are of a baggy construction
  - that are embossed (have raised writing on them)
  - that have clasps on them
  - that are not sharply creased
  - that are preprinted on the inside

## **Printable area**

The printable area depends on the settings in the application you are using. The figures below show the unprintable areas on cut sheet paper and envelopes.





Paper	Paper Size		•Тор	Bottom	3Left	4 Right
Cut Sheet	Letter, A4	Fax	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
		Printer	0.12 in. (0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	0.12 in. (0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	0.12 in. (0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	0.12 in. (0.02)* <sup>1</sup>
		Сору	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
	Executive, Legal	Printer	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
	A5	Сору	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
		Printer	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
Post Card	4"×6"	Printer	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.
Index Card	5"×8"		(0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	(0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	(0.02)* <sup>1</sup>	(0.02)*1
Envelopes	DL,C5, COM10, Monarch	Printer	0.67 in.	0.67 in.	0.12 in.	0.12 in.

\*1 When you set the Near Edge feature to ON in the printer driver.

Printable area depends on the Printer driver settings.

The figures above are approximate and the printable area may vary depending on the type of cut sheet paper you are using.

#### To load paper or other media

1 Fan the stack of paper well to avoid paper jams and mis-feeds.



**2** Unfold the paper support, and press and slide the paper guide to fit the paper width.



**3** Gently insert the paper. Make sure the print side is towards you and the paper is below the maximum paper mark.



#### To load glossy paper

- **1** Fan the stack of glossy paper well.
- **2** Put a sheet of plain paper in the paper tray first, and then put the stack of glossy paper on top of it.

If the glossy sheets are 'double-feeding', put one sheet in the paper tray at a time.

#### To load envelopes

1 Before loading, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

If the envelopes are 'double-feeding', put one envelope in the paper tray at a time.



**2** Press and slide the paper guide to fit the width of the envelopes. Insert them into the paper tray with the address side toward you and pointed in the direction below.



# **3** On-Screen Programming

## User-friendly programming

Your MFC is designed to be easy to use with LCD on-screen programming using the navigation key. User-friendly programming helps you take full advantage of all the menu selections your MFC has to offer.

Since your programming is done on the LCD, we have created step-by-step on-screen instructions to help you program your MFC. All you need to do is follow the instructions as they guide you through the menu selections and programming options.

## Menu table

You can probably program your machine without the User's Guide. But to help you understand the menu selections and options that are found in the MFC programs, use the Menu table on page 3-3.

You can program your MFC by pressing **Menu/Set** followed by the menu numbers. For example to set FAX RESOLUTION to FINE: Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **2**, **2** and **(**) to select FINE. Press **Menu/Set**.

## **Memory Storage**

If there is a power failure, you will not lose your menu settings because they are stored permanently. Temporary settings (such as Contrast, Overseas Mode, and so on) will be lost. You may also have to reset the date and time.

# **Navigation key**



- \*Access the menu
- \*Go to the next menu level
- \*Accept an option
- \*Scroll through the current menu level
- \*Go back to the previous menu level
- \*Go forward to the next menu level

SELECT ↑↓

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow$ 

2.FAX/TEL

SELECT ↑ ↓

3.COPY

1.GENERAL SETUP

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow$  & SET

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow$  & SET

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow$  & SET

6.PRINT REPORTS

4. PHOTOCAPTURE

5.MAINTENANCE

& SET

& SET

& SET

\*Exit the menu

You can access the menu mode by pressing **Menu/Set**. When you enter the menu, the LCD scrolls.

Stop/Exit

Menu/Set

Press 1 for General Setup menu

-OR-

Press 2 for Fax/Tel menu

-OR-

Press 3 for Copy menu

-OR-

Press 4 for PhotoCapture menu

\_\_OR\_\_

Press **5** for Maintenance menu —**OR**—

Press 6 for Print Reports menu

-OR-

You can scroll more quickly through each

menu level by pressing the arrow for the direction you want on (. Then set an option by pressing **Menu/Set** when that option appears on the LCD.

Then the LCD shows the next menu level.

Press ( ) to scroll to your next menu selection.

#### Press Menu/Set.

When you finish setting an option, the LCD shows ACCEPTED.

Use () to scroll backward if you passed your choices or want to save keystrokes.

The current setting is always the option without a "?".

#### Press the Menu numbers. (ex. Press 1, 1 for) Paper Type -OR-Stop:Exit to select select accept

Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page
1.GENERAL SETUP	1.PAPER TYPE	_	PLAIN INKJET GLOSSY (4-COLOR or 3-COLOR) TRANSPARENCY	Sets the type of paper in the paper tray.	4-1
	2.PAPER SIZE	_	<b>LETTER</b> LEGAL A4	Sets the size of paper in the paper.	4-2
	3.DATE/TIME	_	-	Puts the date and time on the LCD and in headings of faxes you send.	4-2
	4.STATION ID	_	_	Program your name and fax number to appear on each page sent.	4-3
	5.VOLUME	1.RING	HIGH MED LOW OFF	Adjusts the ring volume.	4-6
		2.BEEPER	HIGH MED <b>LOW</b> OFF	Adjusts the volume level of the beeper.	4-6
		3.SPEAKER	HIGH MED LOW OFF	Adjusts the speaker volume.	4-7
		4. HANDS ET	HIGH LOW	Adjusts handset volume.	4-7
		5.VOLUME AMPLIFY	ON (PERMANENT/ TEMPORARY) OFF	For the hearing-impaired, you can set the volume to the VOL AMPLIFY: ON setting on a permanent or temporary basis.	4-9

The factory settings are shown in Bold.

Menu/Set



Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	6	Descriptions	Page
1.GENERAL SETUP (Continued)	6.AUTO DAYLIGHT	_	ON <b>OFF</b>		Changes for Daylight Savings Time automatically.	4-9
	7.LCD CONTRAST	_			Adjusts the contrast of LCD.	4-10
	8.TONE/PULSE	_	<b>TONE</b> PULSE		Selects the dialing mode.	4-10
	9.LOCAL LANGUAGE (Canada Only)	_	ENGLIS FRENCH		Allows you to change the LCD Language for your country.	See French User's Guide
2.FAX/TEL	1.SETUP RECEIVE	1.RECEIVE MODE	FAX ON FAX/TE MANUAL	L	You can choose the receive mode that best suits your needs.	5-2
		2.RING DELAY	RING DELAY	04 03 02 01 00	Sets the number of rings before the MFC answers in FAX or FAX/TEL mode.	5-3
			TOLL SAVER	ON OFF	MFC rings two extra times if there are no messages to get, so you can hang up and not pay for the call.	5-3
		3.F/T RING TIME	70 SEC 40 SEC 30 SEC 20 SEC		Sets the pseudo/double-ring time in FAX/TEL mode.	5-4



Press the Menu numbers. (ex. Press <b>1</b> , <b>1</b> for)		
Paper Type		
OR		
► Select	► Select	to exit

Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page	
(Continued) REC	1.SETUP RECEIVE (Continued)	4.EASY RECEIVE	<b>ON</b> SEMI OFF	Receives fax messages without pressing the Fax Start key.	5-5	
		5.REMOTE CODE	<b>ON</b> ( <del>*</del> 51, #51) OFF	You can answer all calls at an extension or external phone and use codes to turn the MFC on or off. You can personalize these codes.	5-8	
		6.AUTO REDUCTION	<b>ON</b> OFF	Reduces the size of the incoming faxes.	5-6	
		7.POLLING RX	ON OFF	Sets up your MFC to poll another fax machine.	5-9	
	2.SETUP SEND	1.CONTRAST	AUTO S.LIGHT S.DARK	Changes the lightness or darkness of faxes you send.	6-5	
			2.FAX RESOLUTION	STANDARD FINE S. FINE PHOTO COLOR STD COLOR FINE	Sets the default resolution for outgoing faxes.	6-6
		3.DELAYED FAX	_	Sets the time of day that the delayed faxes will be sent.	6-14	
		4.BATCH TX	ON OFF	Combines delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day in one transmission.	6-15	
		5.REAL TIME TX	OFF ON NEXT FAX ONLY	You can send a fax without using the memory.	6-9	



Menu/Set



Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page
2.FAX/TEL (Continued)	2.SETUP SEND (Continued)	6.POLLED TX	ON OFF	Sets up your MFC with a document to be retrieved by another fax machine.	6-15
		7.OVERSEAS MODE	ON OFF	Adjusts for overseas transmissions, which can sometimes cause problems.	6-13
		0.SCAN SIZE	A4 LETTER	If originals are A4 size set Scan Glass Size to A4.	6-3
	3.SET AUTO DIAL	1.SPEED-DIAL	_	Stores Speed Dial numbers, so you can dial by pressing only a few keys.	7-1
		2.SETUP GROUPS	_	Sets up a Group number for Broadcasting.	7-3
	4.SETUP REPORTS	1.TRANSMISSION	ON ON+IMAGE <b>OFF</b> OFF+IMAGE	Initial setup for Transmission Verification Report and Activity Report.	10-1
		2.ACT. INTERVAL	EVERY 7 DAYS EVERY 2 DAYS EVERY 24 HOURS EVERY 12 HOURS EVERY 6 HOURS EVERY 50 FAXES OFF		10-1
	5.REMOTE FAX OPT	1.FAX FWD/PAGING	<b>OFF</b> FAX FORWARD PAGING	Sets the MFC to forward fax messages or to call your pager.	8-2
		2.FAX STORAGE	ON OFF	Stores incoming faxes in the memory so you can retrieve them while you are away from your machine.	8-1



#### Press the Menu numbers. (ex. Press 1, 1 for) Paper Type -OR-Stop: Exit to select select accept Press the Menu numbers. (ex. Press 1, 1 for) Paper Type -ORto to exit

Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page
2.FAX/TEL (Continued)	5.REMOTE FAX OPT (Continued)	3.REMOTE ACCESS	*	You can set your own code for remote retrieval.	8-4
		4.PRINT FAX (Backup Print)	_	Prints incoming faxes stored in the memory.	5-8
	6.REMAINING JOBS	_	_	Checks which jobs are in the memory or cancels a delayed fax or polling job.	5-9 6-10
	7.SETUP MSG CTR	1.OGM	MSG CTR OGM F/T OGM	Play/Record the outgoing message.	9-2
		2.ICM MAX. TIME	30 SEC 60 SEC 120 SEC 180 SEC	Select the maximum length of incoming messages.	9-6
		3.ICM REC.MONITR	<b>ON</b> OFF	Adjusts the speaker volume for voice messages as they come in.	9-6
	0.TEL SERVICE	1.DISTINCTIVE	OFF SET(ON)	Uses the Telephone Company's Distinctive Ring subscriber service to register the ring pattern with the MFC.	5-12
		2.CALLER ID (For USA Only)	—	View or print a list of the last 30 Caller IDs stored in memory.	5-14
3.COPY	1.QUALITY	_	NORMAL BEST FAST	Selects the copy quality.	11-12
	2.BRIGHTNESS	_	+ 	Adjusts the brightness	11-12



Menu/Set



Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page
3.COPY (Continued)	3.CONTRAST	_	+ 	Adjusts the contrast.	11-12
	4.COLOR ADJUST	1.RED	R:+ R:+ R:+ R:+ R:+ R:+	Adjusts the amount of Red in copies.	11-13
		2.GREEN	G:+ G:+ G:+ G:+ G:+ G:+	Adjusts the amount of Green in copies.	
		3.BLUE	B:+ B:+ B:+ B:+ B:+ B:+	Adjusts the amount of Blue in copies.	
4.PHOTOCAPTURE	1.PRINT QUALITY	_	NORMAL <b>FINE</b> PHOTO	Selects the print quality.	12-16
	2.PRINT SIZE	_	5" x 3.5" <b>6" x 4"</b> 7" x 5" 8" x 10"	Selects the print size	12-16
	3.BRIGHTNESS	_	+ + + + +	Adjusts the brightness.	12-16
	4.CONTRAST	_		Adjusts the contrast.	12-16





Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page
4.PHOTOCAPTURE (Continued)	5.TRUE2LIFE	ON OFF	1.WHITE BALANCE 	Adjusts the hue of the white areas.	12-17
			2.SHARPNESS 	Enhances the detail of the image.	
			3.COLOR DENSITY 	Adjusts the total amount of color in the image.	
	6.SCAN TO CARD	—	<b>PDF</b> JPEG	Selects the default file format for color scanning.	15-18
5.MAINTENANCE	1.TEST PRINT	_	_	You can print a test sample page to check the print quality and adjust the Vertical Alignment.	23-9
	2.CLEANING	_	BLACK/CYAN YELLOW/ MAGENTA ALL	You can clean the four color print heads or two colors.	23-9
	3.INK VOLUME	_	<b>BLACK</b> CYAN YELLOW MAGENTA	You can check the ink volume that is left in the cartridge.	23-13



Menu/Set



Main Menu	Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Descriptions	Page		
6.PRINT	1.HELP LIST	_		You can print lists & reports.			10-3
REPORTS	2.AUTO DIAL	—					
	3.FAX ACTIVITY	_	_				
	4.TRANSMISSION	—	_				
	5.USER SETTINGS	—	_				



## Getting started

## Setting the Paper Type

To get the best print quality, set the MFC for the type of paper you are using.

- 1 Press Menu/Set. 1. 1.
- 2 Press (\*) to select PLAIN, INKJET, GLOSSY or TRANSPARENCY. Press Menu/Set

GENERAL	SETUP
1.PAPER	TYPE

- 3 If you selected GLOSSY, press () to select GLOSSY: 4-COLOR or GLOSSY: 3-COLOR. Press Menu/Set
- If The print quality of black ink varies depending on the kind of glossy paper you are using. Black ink is used when you select GLOSSY: 4-COLOR. If the glossy paper you are using repels the black ink, select GLOSSY: 3-COLOR, which simulates black ink by combining the three ink colors.



#### 4 Press Stop/Exit.

The MFC ejects paper with printed surfaces face up onto the paper tray in the front of the machine. When you use transparencies or glossy paper, remove each sheet immediately to prevent smudging or paper jams.

## Setting the Paper Size

You can use three sizes of paper for printing your faxes and copies: A4, letter and legal. When you change the type of paper you load in the MFC, you will need to change the setting for Paper Size at the same time so your MFC can fit an incoming fax on the page.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 1, 2.
- 2 Press to select LETTER, LEGAL or A4.

Press Menu/Set.

- 3 Press Stop/Exit.
- For PhotoCapture Center and Copy Options, you can also change the paper size to post card size  $(4" \times 6")$  for the next copy or printout only.

(See *Paper Size* on page 11-8 and *Paper and Print Size* on page 12-9.)

## Setting the Date and Time

Your MFC displays the date and time, and if you set up the Station ID it prints on every fax you send. If there is a power failure, you may have to reset the date and time. All other settings will not be affected.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **1**, **3**.
- 2 Enter the last two digits of the year. Press **Menu/Set**.
- 3 Enter two digits for the month.
   Press Menu/Set.
   (For example, enter 09 for September, or 10 for October.)
- **4** Enter two digits for the day. Press **Menu/Set**. (For example, enter 06).
- 5 Enter the time in 24-Hour format. Press **Menu/Set**. (For example, enter 15:25 for 3:25 P.M.)
- 6 Press **Stop/Exit**. The LCD now shows the date and time whenever the MFC is in Standby mode.

GENERAL	SETUP
2.PAPER	SIZE

GENERAL SETUP 3.DATE/TIME

DATE/TIME YEAR:20XX

DATE/TIME MONTH:XX

DATE/TIME	
DAY:XX	

DAIE/IIME	
TIME:XX:XX	

## Setting the Station ID

You should store your name or company name and fax number to be printed on all fax pages that you send.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 1, 4.
- 2 Enter your fax number (up to 20 digits).
   Press Menu/Set.

GENERAL SETUP 4.STATION ID	
STATION ID FAX:	

You must enter a fax number to continue (up to 20 digits).

If you do not enter a fax number, you cannot enter any more information.



<sup>
</sup>You can not enter a hyphen.

Use the dial pad to enter your name (up to 20 characters).
 Press Menu/Set.
 (See Entering text on page 4-4.)

STATION ID NAME:

**4** Press **Stop/Exit**. The LCD will show the date and time.

If the Station ID has already been programmed, the LCD will ask you to press **1** to make a change or **2** to exit without changing.

#### **Entering text**

When you are setting certain functions, such as the Station ID, you may need to type text into the MFC. Most number keys have three or four letters printed below them. The keys for 0, # and \* do not have printed letters because they are used for special characters.

By pressing the appropriate number key repeatedly, you can access the character you want.

Press Key	one time	two times	three times	four times
2	А	В	С	2
3	D	Е	F	3
4	G	Н	I	4
5	J	К	L	5
6	М	Ν	0	6
7	Р	Q	R	S
8	т	U	V	8
9	W	Х	Y	Z

#### **Inserting spaces**

To enter a space, press () once between numbers and twice between characters.

#### Making corrections

If you entered a letter incorrectly and want to change it, press to move the cursor after the last correct letter. Then press **Stop/Exit**. All the letters above and to the right of the cursor will be deleted. Re-enter the correct characters. You can also back up and type over incorrect letters.

#### **Repeating letters**

If you need to enter a character that is on the same key as the previous character, press () to move the cursor to the right.

#### Special characters and symbols

Press  $\star$ , **#** or **0**, and then press to move the cursor under the special character or symbol you want. Then press **Menu/Set** to select it.

Press <del>X</del>	for	(space)!" # \$ % & ' ( )
Press <b>#</b>	for	:;<=>?@[]^_
Press 0	for	ÉÀÈÊÎÇËÖ0

#### NOTICE

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or electronic device to send any message via a telephone fax machine unless such messages clearly contain, in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity or other individual sending the message and the telephone number of the sending machines or such business, other entity or individual. In order to program this information into your fax machine, complete the steps described on page 4-3.

## Setting the Ring Volume

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **1**, **5**, **1**.
- 2 Press () to select (OFF, LOW, MED, or HIGH). Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

#### -OR-

You can adjust the ring volume when your MFC is idle (not being used). You can turn the ring OFF or you can select the ring volume level.

Press to adjust the volume level. Every time you press a key, the MFC will ring so you can hear the active setting as the LCD shows it. The volume changes with each key press. The new setting will stay until you change it again.

## Setting the Beeper Volume

You can change the beeper volume. The default (original) setting is LOW. When the beeper is on, the MFC beeps every time you press a key or make a mistake and when a fax is being sent or received.

1 Press Menu/Set, 1, 5, 2. (LOW, MED, HIGH or OFF)

VOLUME 2.BEEPER

- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  to select your option.
- **3** When the LCD shows the option you want. Press **Menu/Set**.
- **4** Press **Stop/Exit**.

VOLUME 1.RING

## Setting the Speaker Volume

You can adjust the speaker volume.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 1, 5, 3.
- 2 Press () to select (OFF, LOW, MED, or HIGH). Press Menu/Set.

```
VOLUME
3.SPEAKER
```

VOLUME

4.HANDSET

3 Press Stop/Exit.

#### -OR-

You can adjust the speaker volume by pressing **Speaker Phone** and  $\bigcirc$  to select a speaker volume level.

Press to adjust the volume level. The LCD shows the setting you are choosing. Each key press changes the volume to the next setting. The new setting will remain until you change it again.

- You can adjust the speaker volume while you are listening to your OGM (Outgoing Message) and ICMs (Incoming Messages).
  - If you turn Incoming Recording Monitor to OFF (Menu/Set, 2, 7, 3) the Speaker for screening calls will be disabled and you won't hear callers leaving messages. The volume for other operations can still be controlled using .

## Setting the Handset Volume

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **1**, **5**, **4**.
- 2 Press to select HIGH or LOW, and then press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

#### -OR-

You can adjust the handset volume any time you are talking on the telephone. There are three handset volume levels, LOW and HIGH. The default setting is LOW.

Press to adjust the volume level. The LCD shows the setting you are choosing. The new setting will remain until you change it again.

# Choosing the Handset Volume (For Volume Amplify)

Before you begin to use the MFC, you must decide if you need to set the handset volume to VOL AMPLIFY: ON for a user who is hearing-impaired. The AMPLIFY volume level complies with FCC standards.

```
VOLUME AMPLIFY: OFF
```

This default setting is appropriate if *none* of the users are hearing-impaired. During a conversation, users can press Volume (,) on the control panel to adjust the volume to LOW or HIGH. When the handset is replaced, the handset volume will remain until you change it again.

```
VOLUME AMPLIFY: ON-TEMPORARY
```

This setting is appropriate if *some* of the users are hearing-impaired. During a conversation, users can press Volume , on the control panel to adjust the volume to LOW, HIGH or AMPLIFY. When the handset is replaced, the handset volume returns to the default setting of LOW.

#### VOLUME AMPLIFY: ON-PERMANENT

Choose VOL AMPLIFY: ON—PERMANENT if all of the users are hearing-impaired. During a conversation, users can press Volume on the control panel to adjust the volume to LOW, HIGH or AMPLIFY. When the handset is replaced, the handset volume returns to the default setting of AMPLIFY.

When you press Volume , on the control panel to adjust the volume, the LCD shows the setting you are choosing. Each key press changes the volume to the next setting.

## 

It is important that you do NOT choose PERMANENT unless ALL the users are hearing-impaired. Otherwise, the default setting of AMPLIFY may damage the hearing of some users.

## **Setting Volume Amplify**

Please carefully read *Choosing the Handset Volume* on page 4-8 before you do the following steps:

- 1 Press Menu/Set. 1. 5. 5. VOLUME 5.VOLUME AMPLIFY 2 If none of the users are VOLUME AMPLIFY hearing-impaired, press (\*) to OFF select OFF, and then press Menu/Set and go to Step 4. \_\_OR\_\_ If some or all of the users are hearing-impaired, select ON?, and then press Menu/Set. 3 If all the users are hearing-impaired, VOLUME AMPLIFY press () to select PERMANENT, PERMANENT and then press Menu/Set. -OR-If only some of the users are VOLUME AMPLIFY TEMPORARY? hearing-impaired, select TEMPORARY?, and then press Menu/Set
- 4 Press Stop/Exit.

## **Turning on Automatic Daylight Savings Time**

You can set the MFC to change automatically for Daylight Savings Time. It will reset itself forward one hour in the Spring and backward one hour in the Fall. Make sure you have set the correct day and time in the DATE/TIME setting.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **1**, **6**.
- 2 Press () to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

GENERAL SETUP 6.AUTO DAYLIGHT

## Setting the LCD Contrast

You can adjust the LCD contrast for a sharper and more vivid display. If you are having difficulty seeing the LCD from your position, we recommend the following contrast settings for improved viewing.

 Press Menu/Set, 1, 7.
 Press 
 To increase the contrast.
 —OR—

GENERAL SETUP 7.LCD CONTRAST

Press to decrease the contrast.

Press Menu/Set.

3 Press Stop/Exit.



## Setting Tone and Pulse dialing mode

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 1, 8.
- 2 Press to select PULSE (or TONE).
  Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

GENERAL SETUP 8.TONE/PULSE

# **5** Setup Receive

## **Basic receiving operations**

## **Choosing the Receive Mode**

There are four different Receive Modes for your MFC. You can choose the mode that best suits your needs. (See *Message Center* on page 9-1 to set up the MC:MSG CTR mode.)

LCD	How it works	When to use it
FAX ONLY (automatic receive)	The MFC automatically answers every call as a fax.	For dedicated fax lines.
FAX/TEL* (fax and telephone)	The MFC controls the line and automatically answers every call. If the call is a fax it will receive the fax. If the call is not a fax it will ring (pseudo/double ring) for you to pick up the call.	Use this mode if you expect to receive lots of fax messages and few telephone calls. You cannot have an answering machine on the same line, even if it is on a separate wall jack (phone socket) on the same line. You cannot use the telephone company's Voice Mail in this mode.
MANUAL (manual receive) (with Distinctive Ring)	You control the phone line and must answer every call yourself.	Use this mode when you are using a computer modem on the same line or if you don't receive many fax messages or with Distinctive Ring. If you hear fax tones, wait until the machine takes over the call, then hang up. (See <i>Easy Receive</i> on page 5-5.)
MC:MSG CTR	The built-in digital Message Center answers voice calls. It will record up to 99 voice messages that are a maximum of 3 minutes each.	Use this mode to record voice messages in the MFC's memory. (See <i>Message Center mode</i> on page 9-1.)

\* In FAX/TEL mode you must set the Ring Delay and F/T Ring Time. If you have extension phones on the line, keep the Ring Delay set to 4 rings.

#### To select or change your Receive Mode 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 1, 1. SETUP RECEIVE 2 Press (\*) to select FAX ONLY, 1.RECEIVE MODE FAX/TEL. Or MANUAL. Press Menu/Set. - Current Receive Mode FAX · FAX ONI Y 4820C F/T: FAX/TEL 1271011:53 FAX MNL : MANUAL PLAIN NORMAL MC : MSG CTR Copy Quality Paper Type If the Message Center Mode is ON, it overrides your Receive Mode setting. The screen shows MC:MSG CTR. Press and hold until it lights. If the Message Center Mode is OFF, the Receive Mode returns to your own setting. (See Message Center on OFF page 9-1.)

## Setting the Ring Delay

The Ring Delay sets the number of times the MFC rings before it answers in FAX ONLY, FAX/TEL and MC:MSG CTR modes. If you have extension phones on the same line as the MFC or subscribe to the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service, keep the Ring Delay setting of 4.

(See Easy Receive on page 5-5 and Operation from extension telephones on page 5-7.)

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 1, 2.
- **2** Press () to select RING DELAY. Press Menu/Set.

SETUP RECEIVE 2.RING DELAY

- **3** Press (\*) to select how many times the line rings before the MFC answers (00-04). Press Menu/Set. (If you select 00, the line won't ring at all.)
- 4 Press Stop/Exit.

## Setting Toll Saver

When you set the toll saver feature, the MFC answers after four rings if you don't have voice or fax messages, and after two rings if you do have voice or fax messages. This way, when you call the MFC for remote retrieval and let it ring three times, you know you have no messages, and can hang up, to avoid a toll charge.



When Toll Saver is ON, it overrides your Ring Delay setting. Toll Saver must be off for the MFC to operate using your Ring Delay setting.

(See Setting the Ring Delay on page 5-3.)

The Toll Saver feature is available only when the Message Center is set to ON.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **2**.
- **2** Press ( ) to select TOLL SAVER. Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press (\*) to select ON. Press **Menu/Set**.
- 4 Press Stop/Exit.

SETUP RECEIVE 2.RING DELAY

## Setting the F/T Ring Time (FAX/TEL mode only)

If you set the Receive Mode to FAX/TEL, you'll need to decide how long the MFC will signal you with its special pseudo/double-ring when you have a voice call. (If it's a fax call, the MFC prints the fax.) This ringing happens after the initial ringing from the phone company. Only the fax machine rings (for 20, 30, 40 or 70 seconds) and no other phones on the same line will ring with the special pseudo/double-ring. However, you can answer the call on the same line as the MFC. (See *Operation from extension telephones* on page 5-7.)

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **3**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select how long the MFC will ring to alert you that you have a voice call. Press **Menu/Set**.
- SETUP RECEIVE 3.F/T RING TIME

3 Press Stop/Exit.

Even if the caller hangs up during the pseudo/double-ringing, the machine will continue to ring for the set time.

### Setting the FAX/TEL Announcement

For the FAX/TEL receive mode, you can set up the MFC to play an outgoing announcement for callers when no one is there to answer calls. (See *Record FAX/TEL Outgoing Announcement (F/T OGM)* on page 9-7.)

## **Easy Receive**

When you use this feature, you don't have to press Fax Start or the Fax Receive Code + 51 when you answer a fax call and hear calling beeps. Just hold the handset and wait a few seconds. When you see **RECEIVING** on the LCD or when you hear "chirps" through the handset of an extension phone connected to another wall jack, just replace the handset. Your MFC does the rest. Selecting ON allows the MFC to receive fax calls automatically, even if you lift the handset of an extension or external phone. Selecting SEMI lets the MFC receive the call only if you've answered it at the MFC. Selecting OFF means you'll have to activate the MFC yourself, by pressing **Fax Start** or by pressing **\* 51** if you are not at your MFC. (See Operation from extension telephones on page 5-7 and For FAX/TEL mode only on page 5-7.)

If you've set the feature to ON, but your MFC doesn't automatically connect a fax call when you lift an external or extension phone handset, press the Fax Receive code  $\times$  51. At the MFC, lift the handset and then press Fax Start.

- If you send faxes from a computer on the same phone line and the MFC intercepts them, set Easy Receive to OFF.
- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **4**.
- 2 Use (\*) to select ON, SEMI, or OFF. Press Menu/Set.

SETUP RECEIVE 4. EASY RECEIVE

**3** Press **Stop/Exit**.
# Printing a reduced incoming fax (Auto Reduction)

If you choose ON, the MFC automatically reduces an incoming fax to fit on one page of letter, legal or A4 size paper, regardless of the paper size of the original. The MFC calculates the reduction ratio by using the page size of the original and your Paper Size setting (**Menu**, **1**, **2**).

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **6**.
- 2 Use ( to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

SETUP RECEIVE 6.AUTO REDUCTION

If you receive faxes that are split onto two pages, turn on this setting.

### Receiving a fax at the end of a conversation

At the end of a conversation you can ask the other party to fax you information before you both hang up.

- 1 Ask the other party to place the original in their machine and to press Start. Tell the other party to wait until your MFC sends receiving tones (chirps) before hanging up.
- 2 When you hear the other machine's CNG tones (beeps), press **Fax Start**.

The LCD shows:

1.SEND 2.RECEIVE

- **3** Press **2** to receive the fax.
- **4** Replace the handset.

# Advanced receiving operations

### **Operation from extension telephones**

If you answer a fax call on an extension telephone, or an external telephone in the EXT. jack, you can make your MFC take the call by using the Fax Receive Code. When you press the Fax Receive Code  $\star$  **5 1**, the MFC starts to receive a fax.

(See Easy Receive on page 5-5.)

If the MFC answers a voice call and pseudo/double-rings for you to take over, use the Telephone Answer Code **# 5 1** to take the call at an extension phone. (See *Setting the F/T Ring Time (FAX/TEL mode only)* on page 5-4.)

If you answer a call and no one is on the line, you should assume that you're receiving a manual fax.

- At an extension phone (on a separate telephone wall jack/socket), press \* 5 1, wait for fax-receiving tones (chirps), and then hang up.
- At an external phone (connected to the MFC's EXT jack), press \* 5 1 and wait for the phone to be disconnected before you hang up (the LCD shows RECEIVING).
- At the MFC's handset, press Fax Start. The LCD will show 1.SEND 2.RECEIVE. Press 2 to receive a fax. Replace the handset.

Your caller will have to press Start to send the fax.

## For FAX/TEL mode only

When the MFC is in FAX/TEL mode, it will use the F/T Ring Time (pseudo/double-ringing) to alert you to pick up a voice call. If you're at the MFC, you can lift the handset to answer.

If you're at an extension or external phone, you'll need to lift the handset during the F/T Ring Time and then press **# 5 1** between the double rings. If no one is on the line, or if someone wants to send you a fax, send the call back to the machine by pressing  $\div$  **5 1**.

### Using a cordless external handset

If your cordless telephone is connected to the EXT. jack of the MFC and you typically carry the cordless handset elsewhere, it is easier to answer calls during the Ring Delay. If you let the MFC answer first, you will have to answer using the cordless and then go to the MFC so you can press **Speaker Phone** to transfer the call to the cordless handset.

### Changing the remote codes

Remote Codes might not work with some telephone systems. The preset Fax Receive Code is  $\div$  **51**. The preset Telephone Answer Code is **# 51**.

- If you are always disconnected when accessing your external TAD remotely, try changing the Fax Receive Code and Telephone Answer Code to other three-digit codes (such as # # # and 9 9 9).
- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **1**, **5**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.

SETUP RECEIVE 5.REMOTE CODE

- **3** If you want to, enter a new Fax Receive Code. Press **Menu/Set**.
- **4** If you want to, enter a new Telephone Answer Code. Press **Menu/Set**.
- 5 Press Stop/Exit.

### Printing a fax from the memory

If you set Fax Storage to ON for Remote Retrieval, you can still print a fax from the memory when you are at your MFC. (See *Setting Fax Storage* on page 8-1.)

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 5, 4.
- 2 Press Fax Start.
- **3** After printing has finished, press **Stop/Exit**.

REMOTE FAX OPT 4.PRINT FAX

### Polling

Polling is the process of retrieving faxes from another fax machine. You can use your MFC to 'poll' other machines, or you can have someone poll your MFC.

Everyone who is involved in Polling needs to set up their fax machines for Polling. When someone polls your MFC to receive a fax, they pay for the call. If you poll someone's fax machine to receive a fax, you pay for the call.

Some fax machines do not respond to the Polling feature.

### **Setting up Polling Receive**

Polling Receive is when you call another fax machine to receive a fax from it.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 1, 7.
- 2 Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.

SETUP REC	EIVE
7.POLLING	RX

- **3** Enter the fax number you are polling.
- 4 Press Fax Start. The LCD shows DIALING.

### Setting up Sequential Polling Receive

Your MFC can ask for faxes from several fax units in a single operation (Sequential Polling Receive). Afterwards, a Sequential Polling Report will be printed.

1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 1, 7.

Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press **Menu/Set**. SETUP RECEIVE 7.POLLING RX

- 2 Enter the fax machines you want to poll using Speed Dial, a Group or the dial pad. You must press **Menu/Set** between each fax number.
- **3** Press **Fax Start**. Your MFC will poll each number or Group number in turn to receive a fax.

Press **Stop/Exit** while the machine is dialing to cancel the polling process.

To cancel all sequential polling receive jobs, press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **6**. (See *Canceling a scheduled job* on page 6-10.)

## **Telephone services**

Your MFC supports the Distinctive Ring telephone service that some telephone companies offer.

If you have Voice Mail, Call Waiting, Call Waiting/Caller ID, RingMaster, an answering service, an alarm system or other custom features on your telephone line, it may affect the way your MFC works. (See Custom features on a single line. on page 23-7.)

If you have Voice Mail on your phone line, please read the following carefully.

### **Distinctive Ring**

Brother uses the term 'Distinctive Ring' but different telephone companies have other names for this service such as SmartRing, RingMaster, Teen-Ring, Indent-a-Call or Indent-a-Ring.

### What does your telephone company's 'Distinctive Ring' do?

Your telephone company's Distinctive Ring service allows you to have more than one number on the same phone line. If you need more than one phone number, it is cheaper than paying for an extra line. Each phone number has its own distinctive ring pattern, so you will know which phone number is ringing. This is one way you can have a separate phone number for your MFC.

Please call your telephone company for availability and rates.

### What does Brother's 'Distinctive Ring' do?

The Brother MFC has a Distinctive Ring feature that allows you to use your MFC to take full advantage of the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service. The new phone number on your line can just receive faxes.



You must pay for your telephone company's Distinctive Ring service before you program the MFC to work with it.

### Do vou have Voice Mail?

If you have Voice Mail on the phone line that you will install your new MFC on, there is a strong possibility that Voice Mail and the MFC will conflict with each other while receiving incoming calls. However, this Distinctive Ring feature allows you to use more than one number on your line, so both Voice Mail and the MFC can work together without any problems. If each one has a separate phone number, neither will interfere with the other's operations.

If you decide to get the Distinctive Ring service from the telephone company, you will need to follow the directions below to 'register' the new Distinctive Ring pattern they give you. This is so your MFC can recognize its incoming calls.



You can change or cancel the Distinctive Ring pattern at any time. You can switch it off temporarily, and turn it back on later. When you get a new fax number, make sure you reset this feature.

### Before you choose the ring pattern to register

You can only register one Distinctive Ring pattern with the MFC. Some ring patterns cannot be registered. The ring patterns below are supported by your Brother MFC. Register the one your telephone company gives you.

Ring Pattern	Rings	
1	long-long	
2	short-long-short	
3	short-short-long	
4	very long (normal pattern)	

If the ring pattern you received is not on this chart, please call your telephone company and ask for one that is shown.

- The MFC will only answer calls to its registered number.
- The first two rings are silent on the MFC. This is because the fax must «listen» to the ring pattern (to compare it to the pattern that was 'registered'). (Other telephones on the same line will ring.)
- If you program the MFC properly, it will recognize the registered ring pattern of the 'fax number' within 2 ring patterns and then answer with a fax tone. When the 'voice number' is called, the MFC will not answer.

### **Registering the Distinctive Ring pattern**

### Very important

After you have set the Distinctive Ring feature to ON, unless you set the MSG CTR mode, the receive mode will be set to MANUAL automatically. Unless you have a TAD or Voice Mail set up on the Distinctive Ring number, MANUAL mode means you must answer all the calls yourself. You can not change the receive mode to another mode while the Distinctive Ring is set to on.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 0, 1.
- 2 Press () to select SET?. Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press (1) to select the stored ring pattern you want to use. Press **Menu/Set**.

(You will hear each pattern as you scroll through the four patterns. Make sure you choose the pattern that the telephone company gave you.)

4 Press **Stop/Exit**. Distinctive Ring is now set to on.

### **Turning off the Distinctive Ring**

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **0**, **1**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select OFF. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

## Caller ID

The Caller ID feature lets you use the Caller ID subscriber service offered by many local telephone companies. This service provides you, by means of the LCD, the name or telephone number of your caller as the line rings.

After a few rings, the LCD shows the telephone number of your caller (or name, if available). Once you pick up the handset, the Caller ID information disappears from the LCD, but the call information remains stored in the Caller ID memory.

- You will see the first 16 characters of the number (or name).
- OUT OF AREA display means call originated outside your Caller ID service area.
- PRIVATE CALL display means the caller has intentionally blocked transmission of information.
- CALL PICKUP display remains on the LCD when no Caller ID information was transmitted.

If both the name and number are received, the LCD shows only the name. You can print a list of Caller ID information received by your MFC. (See *Printing Caller ID List* on page 5-14.)

Caller ID service varies with different carriers. Call your local telephone company to determine the kind of service available in your area.

### **Viewing Caller ID List**

Caller ID memory stores information for up to thirty calls; when the thirty-first call comes in, information about the first call is erased. You can scroll through Caller ID information to review those calls made to your MFC.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **0**, **2**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select DISPLAY #. Press Menu/Set.

TEL SERVICE 2.CALLER ID

If the name was not received, it will not be displayed.

- **3** Press (\*) to scroll through the Caller ID memory to select the Caller ID you want to view, and then press **Menu/Set**. The LCD shows the caller's name and number and the date and time of the call.
- 4 Press (\*) to return to the Caller ID listing.
   —OR—
   Press Stop/Exit.

### **Printing Caller ID List**

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 0, 2.
- 2 Press (\*) to select PRINT REPORT?. Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Fax Start**.
- 4 After printing has finished, press **Stop/Exit**

TEL SERVICE 2.CALLER ID



# How to Dial

There are three ways to dial.

### **Manual Dialing**

Press all of the digits of the phone or fax number.



### Speed Dialing

Press **Search/Speed Dial**, **#**, and then the two digit Speed Dial number. (See *Storing Speed Dial numbers* on page 7-1.)



### Search

You can search for names you have stored in the Speed Dial memory. Press **Search/Speed Dial** and navigation key to search. (See *Storing Speed Dial numbers* on page 7-1.)



## How to Fax

### **Automatic Transmission**

You can use the scanner glass to fax pages of a book or one page at a time. Originals can be up to letter or A4 size (8.5 inches to 11.7 inches).

1 Lift the document cover.



- **2** Using the document guidelines on the left, center the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **3** Close the document cover.

If the original is a book or is thick lift the cover up. Do not slam the cover or press on it.

- Dial the fax number.
   Press Fax Start.
   The MFC starts scanning the first page.
- **5** To send a single page, press **2** (or press **Fax Start** again).The MFC starts sending the original.

\_\_OR\_\_

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 6.

6 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

SET	NEXT	PAGE	
THEN	J PRES	SS SET	

1.YES 2.NO(DIAL

#001 97%

NORMAL

MEMORY

NEXT PAGE?

PLATN

### Press Menu/Set.

The MFC starts scanning. (Repeat Steps 5 and 6 for each additional page.)

Press Stop/Exit to cancel.



### Faxing A4 size originals from the scanner glass

When originals are A4 size, you need to set Scan Glass Size to A4. If you do not, the bottom portion of the faxes will be missing.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **2**, **0**.
- 2 Press ( to select A4 (or LETTER). Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

### **Out of Memory message**

If you get an OUT OF MEMORY message while scanning the first page of a fax, press **Stop/Exit** to cancel the scan. If you get an OUT OF MEMORY message while scanning a subsequent page, you will have the option to press **Fax Start** to send the pages scanned so far, or to press **Stop/Exit** to cancel the operation.

### **Manual Transmission**

Manual transmission lets you hear the dialing, ringing and fax-receiving tones while sending a fax.

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Pick up the handset and listen for a dial tone.

Press **Speaker Phone** and listen for a dial tone.

- **3** Dial the fax number you want to call.
- **4** When you hear the fax tone, press **Fax Start**.

1.SEND 2.RECEIVE

- **5** Press **1** to send a fax.
- 6 If you picked up the handset, replace the handset.

You can not send multiple pages.

SETUP SEND 0.SCAN SIZE

### Sending a fax at the end of a conversation

At the end of a conversation you can send a fax to the other party before you both hang up.

- 1 Ask the other party to wait for fax tones (beeps) and then press Start before hanging up.
- 2 Place the original on the scanner glass. Press **Fax Start**.

The LCD shows:

**3** Press **1** to send the fax.

4 Replace the handset.

1.SEND 2.RECEIVE

# **Basic sending operations**

### Sending faxes using multiple settings

When you send a fax you can choose any combination of these settings: contrast, resolution, overseas mode, delayed fax timer, polling transmission or real time transmission. After each setting is accepted, the LCD will ask if you want to enter more settings:

Press **1** to select more settings. The LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu.

OTHER	SETTINGS?
1.YES	2.NO

-OR-

Press **2** if you have finished choosing settings and go to the next step.

### Contrast

If your original is very light or very dark, you may want to set the contrast.

Use  ${\tt S.LIGHT}$  to make the document darker.

Use S. DARK to make the document lighter.

1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.

SETUP	SEND
1.CONT	FRAST

Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 1.

- 2 Press (\*) to select AUTO, S.LIGHT or S.DARK. Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **1** if you want to choose more settings and the LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu.

-OR-

Press **2** if you have finished choosing settings for this page, and then go to Step 4.

- 4 Enter a fax number.
- 5 Press Fax Start to send the fax.

The MFC starts scanning the first page.

OTHER	SETTINGS?
1.YES	2.NO

**6** To send a single page, press 2 (or press Fax Start again).

The MFC starts sending the original. \_\_OR\_\_

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 7.

7 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

SET NEXT PAGE THEN PRESS SET

SETUP SEND

2.FAX RESOLUTION

### Press Menu/Set

The MFC starts scanning and returns to Step 6. (Repeat Step 6 and 7 for each additional page).

### Fax resolution

When you have an original on the scanner glass you can use the Fax Resolution key to change the setting temporarily (for this fax only). Press Fax Resolution repeatedly until the LCD shows the setting you want.

-OR-

You can change the default setting.

- 1 Press Menu/Set. 2. 2. 2.
- 2 Press ( ) to select the resolution vou want.

Press Menu/Set.

3 Press Stop/Exit.

STANDARD	- Suitable for most typed documents.
----------	--------------------------------------

- Good for small print and transmits a little FINE \_ slower than Standard resolution.
- Good for small print or artwork and transmits S. FINE slower than Fine resolution.
- Use when the original has varying shades of PHOTO \_\_\_\_\_ gray. This has the slowest transmission time.
- COLOR STD Use to send the original in color.
- COLOR FINE Better quality than COLOR STD. Use to send the original as Art-work or photographs in color.

#### NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

### **Color fax transmission**

Your MFC can send a color fax to machines that support this feature.

However, color files cannot be stored in the memory, so Delayed fax and Polling Transmission features are not available.

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Fax Resolution to select the COLOR STD or COLOR FINE.
- **3** Enter the fax number using the dial pad, Speed Dial or Search.
- 4 Press Fax Start.



When you send a color fax, the MFC will send it in real time (even if REAL TIME TX is set to OFF).

You can not send multiple pages.

### Manual and automatic fax redial

If you are sending a fax manually and the line is busy, press **Redial/Pause**, and then press **Fax Start** to try again. If you want to make a second call to the last number dialed, you can save time by pressing **Redial/Pause** and **Fax Start**.

**Redial/Pause** only works if you dialed from the control panel. *If you are sending a fax automatically* and the line is busy, the MFC will automatically redial one time after five minutes.

### Dual Access (Not available for color faxes)

You can dial a number, and begin scanning the fax into memory even when the MFC is receiving, sending or printing a fax from memory. The LCD shows the new job number and available memory.

If you get a OUT OF MEMORY message while scanning the first page of a fax, press **Stop/Exit** to cancel scanning. If you get a OUT OF MEMORY message while scanning a subsequent page, you can press **Fax Start** to send the pages scanned so far, or press **Stop/Exit** to cancel the operation.

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Enter the fax number.
- **3** Press **Fax Start** to send the fax.

The MFC starts scanning the first page and the LCD shows the job number (#XXX) of the fax and how much memory is available.

**4** To send a single page, press **2** (or press **Fax Start** again).

NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

The MFC starts sending the original.

\_\_OR\_\_

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 5.

**5** Place the next page on the scanner glass.Press **Menu/Set**.

The MFC starts scanning, and then

returns to Step 4. (Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for each additional page). You can repeat Steps 1 to 5 for the next fax.

Your MFC normally uses Dual Access. However, to send a color fax, the MFC will send the original in real time (even if Real Time TX is OFF).

The number of pages you can scan into the memory will vary depending on the data that is printed on them.

SET NEXT PAGE THEN PRESS SET

### **Real Time Transmission**

When you are sending a fax, the MFC will scan the originals into the memory before sending. Then, as soon as the phone line is free, the MFC will start dialing and sending.

If the memory becomes full, the MFC will send the original in real time (even if REAL TIME TX is set to OFF).

Sometimes, you may want to send an important original immediately, without waiting for memory transmission.

If you want to fax multiple pages, use Dual Access. (See *Dual Access (Not available for color faxes)* on page 6-8.)

You can set  ${\tt REAL}$  TIME TX to ON for all documents or only for the next fax.

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 5.
- To change the default setting, press
   to select ON (or OFF).

Press Menu/Set.

Go to Step 5.

\_\_OR\_\_

For the next fax transmission only, press ( to select NEXT FAX ONLY.

Press Menu/Set.

- 4 Press () to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.
- **5** Press **1** if you want to choose more settings and the LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu.

ie	SE	T	U
C	D		

Press **2** if you have finished choosing settings for this page, and then go to Step 6.

- 6 Enter the fax number.
- 7 Press Fax Start to send the fax.
- If you are sending a color Fax, the MFC will send it in real time (even if REAL TIME TX is set to OFF).

SETUP SEND 5.REAL TIME TX

OTHER SETTINGS? 1.YES 2.NO

### Checking job status

Check which jobs are still waiting in the memory to be sent. (If there are no jobs, the LCD shows NO JOB WAITING.)

(See Canceling a job while scanning the original on page 6-10.)

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **6**.
- If you have more than one job waiting, press (\*) to scroll through the list.
- FAX/TEL 6.REMAINING JOBS

3 Press Stop/Exit.

# Canceling a job while scanning, dialing and sending the original

You can cancel a job while you are scanning it into memory by pressing **Stop/Exit**.

You can also cancel a job while the MFC are dialing or sending the original by pressing **Stop/Exit**.

### Canceling a scheduled job

You can cancel a fax job that is waiting in memory. (See *Checking job status* on page 6-10.)

 Press Menu/Set, 2, 6.
 Any jobs that are waiting will appear on the LCD.

FAX/TEL 6.REMAINING JOBS

2 If you have more than two jobs waiting, press 💭 to select the job you want to cancel.

### Press Menu/Set.

\_\_OR\_\_

If you only have one job waiting, go to Step 3.

**3** Press **1** to cancel.

\_\_OR\_\_

Press **2** to exit without canceling.

To cancel another job go to Step 2.

4 Press Stop/Exit.

## Advanced sending operations

### Broadcasting (Not available for color faxes)

Broadcasting is when the same fax message is automatically sent to more than one fax number. Using the **Menu/Set** key, you can include Groups, Speed Dial numbers and up to 50 manually dialed numbers. If you did not use up any of the numbers for Groups, access codes or credit card numbers, you can 'broadcast' faxes to as many as 130 different numbers. However, the available memory will vary depending on the types of jobs in the memory and the number of locations used for broadcasting. If you broadcast to more than the maximum numbers available, you will not be able to use Dual Access and the Timer.

To include Speed Dial numbers and manually dialed numbers in the same broadcast, you must press **Menu/Set** between each of the numbers. Use **Search/Speed Dial** to help you choose the numbers easily.

(See Setting up Groups for Broadcasting on page 7-3.)

After the broadcast is finished, a Broadcast Report will be printed to let you know the results.

- Enter the long dialing sequence numbers as you would normally, but remember that each Speed Dial number counts as one number, so the number of locations you can store becomes limited.
- If the line is busy a connection cannot be made so the MFC will redial the number.
- If the memory is full, press Stop/Exit to stop the job or if more than one page has been scanned, press Fax Start to send the portion that is in the memory.
  - **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
  - 2 Enter a number using Speed Dial, a Group number, Search or the dial pad.

(Example: Group number)

**3** Press **Menu/Set**. You will be asked to press the next number.

- **4** Enter the next number. (Example: Speed Dial number)
- 5 Press Menu/Set.
- 6 Enter another fax number. (Example: Manual dialing using the dial pad.)
- 7 Press Fax Start.
- 8 To send a single page, press 2 (or press Fax Start again). The MFC starts sending the original. \_\_OR\_\_ To send more than one page, press 1 and go to Step 9.
- 9 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

#### NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

SET NEXT PAGE THEN PRESS SET

### Press Menu/Set.

The MFC starts scanning and returns to Step 8. (Repeat Step 8 and 9 for each additional page).

### **Overseas Mode**

If you are having difficulty sending a fax overseas due to possible interference on the phone line, we recommend that you turn on the Overseas Mode. After you send a fax using this feature, the feature will turn itself off.

**1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.

SETUP 7.OVER	SEND	
7.OVER	RSEAS	MODE

- 2 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 7.
- **3** Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press **Menu/Set**.
- **4** Press **1** if you want to choose more settings and the LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu.

-OR-

Press **2** if you have finished choosing settings, and then go to Step 5

- 5 Enter the fax number you're calling.
- 6 Press Fax Start.
- 7 To send a single page,

press 2 (or press Fax Start again).

NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

The MFC starts sending the original.

-OR-

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 8.

8 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

SET THEN	NEXT	PA	AGE	
THEN	PRES	SS	SET	

Press Menu/Set.

The MFC starts scanning and returns to Step 7. (Repeat Step 7 and 8 for each additional page).

### Delayed Fax (Not available for color faxes)

During the day you can store up to 50 faxes in the memory to be sent within 24 hours. These faxes will be sent at the time of day you enter in Step 3. Press Menu/Set to accept it, or enter another time for the faxes to be sent.

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 3.
- 3 Enter the time you want the fax to be sent (in 24-hour format). Press Menu/Set.

(For example, enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)

4 Press 1 if you want to choose more settings and the LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu. -OR-

Press 2 if you have finished choosing settings, and then go to Step 5.

- 5 Enter the fax number.
- 6 Press Fax Start
- 7 To send a single page, press 2 (or press Fax Start again). \_\_OR\_\_

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 8.

8 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

The MFC starts scanning and returns to Step 7. (Repeat Step 7 and 8 for each additional page).

<sup>9</sup> The number of pages you can scan into the memory depends on the amount of data that is printed on each page.

## Press Menu/Set

SETUP SEND 3.DELAYED FAX

NEXT PAGE? 1.YES 2.NO(DIAL)

SET NEXT PAGE

THEN PRESS SET

# Delayed Batch Transmission (Not available for color faxes)

Before sending the delayed faxes, your MFC will economize by sorting all the documents in the memory by destination and scheduled time. All delayed faxes that are scheduled to be sent at the same time to the same fax number will be sent as one fax.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 4.
- 2 Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.

SETUP	SEND
4.BATC	CH TX

**3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

# Setting up Polled Transmission (Not available for color faxes)

Polled Transmission is when you set up your MFC to wait with an original so another fax machine can retrieve it.

 Place the original that is going to be retrieved face down on the scanner glass.

SETUP	SEND
6.POLL	ED TX

- 2 Press Menu/Set, 2, 2, 6.
- **3** Press (\*) to choose ON (or OFF). Press **Menu/Set**.
- **4** Press **1** if you want to choose more settings and the LCD will return to the SETUP SEND menu.

-OR-

Press 2 if you have finished choosing settings, and go to step 5.

- 5 Press Fax Start.
- 6 To send a single page, press 2 (or press Fax Start again).

NEXT I	PAGE?
1.YES	2.NO(DIAL)

The MFC starts sending the original.

\_\_OR\_\_

To send more than one page, press **1** and go to Step 7.

7 Place the next page on the scanner glass.

SET NEXT PAGE THEN PRESS SET

#### Press Menu/Set.

- **8** The MFC starts scanning and returns to Step 6. (Repeat Step 6 and 7 for each additional page).
- If Real Time Transmission is set to OFF, your original will be waiting in memory until polled. This information is available for retrieval by any other fax machine unless it is deleted from the memory. (See *Canceling a scheduled job* on page 6-10.)

# Auto Dial numbers and **Dialing options**

## Storing numbers for easy dialing

You can set up your MFC to do two types of easy dialing: Speed Dial and Groups for Broadcasting faxes.



🔊 If you lose electrical power, the auto dial numbers that are in the memory will not be lost.

### Storing Speed Dial numbers

You can store Speed Dial numbers, so that when you dial you will only have to press a few keys (Search/Speed Dial, #, the two-digit number, and Fax Start). The MFC can store 80 Speed Dial numbers.

(USA Only) Speed Dial number 01 has been programmed for the Brother fax back system. You can change it if you want to.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 3, 1.
- 2 Use the dial pad to enter a two-digit Speed Dial number (01-80). (For example, press **0 5**.) Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Enter the number (up to 20 digits). Press Menu/Set.

SET	AUTO	DIAL
1.SPEED-DIAL		

SPEED-DIAL SPEED-DIAL? #

SPEED-DIAL	
#05:_	

**4** Use the dial pad to enter the name (up to 15 characters). Press Menu/Set.

SPEED-DIAL NAME:

(You can use the chart on page 4-4 to help you enter letters.) ----OR----

Press **Menu/Set** to store the number without a name.

**5** Go to Step 2 to store another Speed Dial number. -OR-

Press Stop/Exit.

### **Changing Speed Dial numbers**

If you try to store a Speed Dial number where a number is already stored, the LCD will show the name stored there (or number) and will ask you to do one of the following:

**1** Press **1** to change the stored number.

#05:XXXXXXXX 1.CHANGE 2.EXIT

-OR-

Press 2 to exit without making a change.

2 Enter a new number.

Press Menu/Set.

- If you want to erase the whole number or whole name, press Stop/Exit when the cursor is under the first the digits or letters. The characters above and to the right of the cursor will be deleted.
- If you want to change a character, use b to position the cursor under the character you want to change, and then type over it.
- **3** Follow the directions beginning at Step 4 in Storing Speed Dial numbers on the previous page.

### Setting up Groups for Broadcasting

Groups allow you to send the same fax message to many fax numbers by pressing only a few keys (Search/Speed Dial, #, the two-digit number, and Fax Start). First, you'll need to store each fax number as a Speed Dial number.

Then, you can combine them into a Group. Each Group uses up a Speed Dial number. You can have up to six Groups, or you can assign up to 79 numbers to one large Group.

(See Storing Speed Dial numbers on page 7-1 and Broadcasting (Not available for color faxes) on page 6-11.)

#### 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 3, 2.

- 2 Use the dial pad to enter the two-digit Speed Dial number where you want to store the Group. Press Menu/Set. (For example, press 07 and Menu/Set.)
- **3** Use the dial pad to enter the Group number.

### Press Menu/Set.

(For example, press **1** for Group 1.)

The Group number must be between 1 and 6.

- 4 To include Speed Dial numbers in the Group, press them as follows: (For example, for Speed Dial numbers 05 and 09. Press Search/Speed Dial, 05, Search/Speed Dial, 09. The LCD shows: #05#09.)
- 5 Press Menu/Set to accept the Speed Dial numbers for this Group.
- 6 Use the dial pad and the chart on page 4-3 to enter a name for the Group. Press Menu/Set.
  - (For example, type NEW CLIENTS).
- 7 Press Stop/Exit.

You can print a list of all the Speed Dial numbers. (See Printing reports on page 10-1.)



G01:#05#09

SETUP GROUPS

NAME:

SET AU	JTO DIAL
2.SETU	JTO DIAL JP GROUPS
SETUP	GROUPS DIAL? #
SPEED	DIAL? #

SETUP GROUPS SPEED-DIAL? #07

SETUP GROUPS

SETUP GROUP:G01

# **Dialing options**

### Access codes and credit card numbers

Sometimes you may want to choose from several long distance carriers when you make a call. Rates may vary depending on the time and destination. To take advantage of low rates, you can store the access codes or long-distance carriers and credit card numbers as Speed-Dial numbers. You can store these long dialing sequences by dividing them and setting them up on separate keys in any combination. You can even include manual dialing using the dial pad.

The combined number will be dialed in the order that you entered it as soon as you press **Fax Start**.

(See Storing Speed Dial numbers on page 7-1.)

For example, you can store '555' on Speed Dial #03 and '7000' on Speed Dial #02. If you press **Search/Speed Dial**, **#03**,

Search/Speed Dial, #02, and Fax Start, you will dial '555-7000'.

To temporarily change a number, you can substitute part of the number with manual dialing using the dial pad.

For example, to change the number to 555-7001 you could press **Search/Speed Dial**, **#03** and then press **7001** using the dialing pad.

If you must wait for another dial tone or signal at any point in the dialing sequence, store a pause there in the number by pressing **Redial/Pause**. Each key press adds a 3.5-second delay.

### Pause

Press **Redial/Pause** to insert a 3.5-second pause between numbers. If you are dialing overseas, you can press **Redial/Pause** as many times as needed to increase the length of the pause.

### Fax Redial

If you're sending a fax manually and the line is busy, press **Redial/Pause** to try again. Any time you want to make a second call to the last number dialed, press **Redial/Pause** to save time.

If you're sending a fax automatically and the line is busy, the MFC will automatically redial one time five minutes after the transmission.

### Tone or Pulse

If you have a Pulse dialing service, but need to send Tone signals (for example, for telephone banking), follow the instructions below. If you have Touch Tone service, you will not need this feature to send tone signals.

- **1** Lift the handset.
- **2** Press **#**. Any digits dialed after this will send tone signals.
- **3** When you hang up, the MFC will return to the Pulse dialing service.

# **Telephone (Voice) Operation**

You can use MFC to make voice telephone calls by dialing manually or by using Search or Speed Dial memory. You can use the handset to make and receive calls. (See *How to Dial* on page 7-6.)

When you dial an auto dial number, the LCD shows the name you've stored, or if you haven't stored a name, the fax number you've stored.

### How to Dial

There are three ways to dial.

## Manual Dialing

Pressing all of the digits of the phone or fax number.



## Speed Dialing

Press **Search/Speed Dial**, **#**, and then the two digit Speed Dial number. (See *Storing Speed Dial numbers* on page 7-1.)



### Search

You can search for names you have stored in the Speed Dial memory. Press **Search/Speed Dial** and navigation key to search. (See *Storing Speed Dial numbers* on page 7-1.)



\* To search alphabetically, you can use dial pad to enter the first letter of the name you are looking for.

### **Dialing Telephone Call**

- Pick up the handset.
   OR—
   Press Speaker Phone.
- **2** When you hear a dial tone, dial the call using the dial pad or Speed Dial and Search.
- **3** If you pressed **Speaker Phone**, speak clearly toward the microphone **.**

You can switch from handset to Speaker Phone by pressing **Speaker Phone**, then replacing the handset. You can switch from Speaker Phone to handset by lifting the handset.

4 To hang up, replace the handset.
—OR—
Press Speaker Phone.

### Answering Calls with the Speaker Phone

When the MFC rings, instead of lifting the handset, press **Speaker Phone**. Speak clearly, toward the microphone  $\underbrace{\bullet}$ . To end the call, press **Speaker Phone**.

If you have a bad telephone line connection, the other party might hear your voice echoed during the call. Hang up and try the call again—**OR**—Pick up the handset.

### Hold

- **1** Press **Hold** to put a call on Hold.
- 2 You can put down the handset without disconnecting the call.
- **3** Pick up the MFC handset to release the call from Hold. Picking up an extension handset will not release the call from Hold.

**Remote fax options** 

(Not available for color faxes)

# **Setting Fax Storage**

If you set Fax Storage to ON, you can use Fax Forwarding to forward fax messages to another location, or you can use Paging if you want to be paged for voice and fax messages. Use the Remote Retrieval commands to get voice and fax messages from your MFC. The LCD will show when you have a fax stored in memory.

Press Menu/Set, 2, 5, 2.
 Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF).
 Press Menu/Set.

REMOTE	FAX	OPT
2.FAX	STORA	AGE

- 2 Press Stop/Exit.
- If there are faxes in the memory when you turn Fax Storage OFF, the LCD will ask if you want to erase the faxes from the memory.

ERASE	ALL FAX?
ERASE	2.NO

If you press 1, all fax data is erased and Fax Storage is turned off.

If you press **2**, faxes are not erased and Fax Storage stays on. (See *Printing a fax from the memory* on page 5-8.)

## **Backup Print**

If you've set FAX STORAGE to ON, your MFC automatically prints faxes as they are received into the memory.

This is a safety feature in case the power goes off so you won't lose your messages.

## **Fax Forwarding/Paging**



You cannot use Paging and Fax Forwarding at the same time.
You cannot use Paging and Fax Forwarding when Fax Storage is set to OFF.

### Programming a Fax Forwarding number

When Fax Forwarding is set to ON, your MFC stores received faxes in the memory. Then it dials the fax number you've programmed and forwards the fax message.

Make sure the Fax Storage is set to ON.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 5, 1.
- 2 Press in until the LCD shows FAX FORWARD?. Press Menu/Set.

REMOTE FAX OPT 1.FAX FWD/PAGING

FAX FWD/PAGING FAX FORWARD?

The LCD will ask you to enter the fax number to which faxes will be forwarded.

Enter the forwarding number (up to 20 digits).
 Press Menu/Set.

FAX	FORWARD
#:_	

4 Press Stop/Exit.

### Programming your pager number

When Paging is selected, your MFC dials the pager number you've programmed, and then dials your Personal Identification Number (PIN). This activates your pager so you will know that you have a fax message in the memory.


# Setting your remote access code

The remote access code lets you access the Remote Retrieval features when you are away from your MFC. Before you use the remote access and retrieval features, you have to set up your own code. The default code is inactive code (---  $\star$ ).

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **5**, **3**.
- 2 Enter a three-digit number from 000 to 999.

REMOTE FAX OPT 3.REMOTE ACCESS

Press Menu/Set. (The "\*" cannot be changed.)

- Do not use the same digits that appear in your Fax Receive Code( + 51) or Telephone Answer Code (#51).(See Operation from extension telephones on page 5-7.)
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.
- You can change your code at any time by entering a new one. If you want to make your code inactive, press **Stop/Exit** in Step 2 to restore the inactive setting (--- \*).

### **Remote retrieval**

You can call your MFC from any telephone or fax machine using touch tone, then use the Remote Access Code and remote commands to retrieve fax or voice messages. Cut out the Remote Access Card on the last page and keep it in your wallet to help you.

#### Using your remote access code

- 1 Dial your fax number from a telephone or another fax machine using touch tone.
- 2 When your MFC answers, immediately enter your Remote Access Code (3 digits followed by \*).
- **3** The MFC signals the kinds of messages it has received:

```
1 long beep — Fax message(s)
```

- 2 long beep Voice message(s)
- 3 long beep Fax & Voice message(s)No beeps No messages
- **4** The MFC gives two short beeps, which tells you to enter a command. The MFC will hang up if you wait longer than 30 seconds to enter a command. The MFC will beep three times, if you enter an invalid command.
- **5** Press **90** to reset the MFC when you've finished.
- 6 Hang up.
- If your MFC is set to MANUAL mode and you want to use the remote retrieval features, you can access your MFC by waiting about 2 minutes after it starts ringing, and then entering the Remote Access Code within 30 seconds.

#### **Remote commands**

Follow the commands below to access features when you are away from the MFC. When you call the MFC and enter your Remote Access Code (3 digits followed by  $\star$ ), the system will give two short beeps and you must enter a remote command.

Ren	note com	mands	Operation details		
91	Playing	Voice Messages	After one long beep, the MFC plays the ICM.		
			Press 1 while listening to an ICM to repeat it. If you press 1 before a message, you will hear the previous message.		
	2 (	Skip next)	While playing the ICM, you can skip to the next message.		
	9 STOP	Playing	Stop playing the ICM.		
93	Erase all ICM		If you hear one long beep, the erase is accepted. If you hear three short beeps, you cannot erase because all voice messages have not been played, or there is no voice message to erase. *This code erases all recorded messages, not one at a time.		
94	Play and Record OGM in Memory				
	1 Play	1 MSG CTR OGM	The MFC plays the selected OGM. You can		
		2 F/T OGM	stop playing OGMs by pressing <b>9</b> .		
	2 Record	1 MSG CTR OGM	After one long beep, you can record the		
		2 F/T OGM	selected OGM. You will hear the message played once. You can stop recording the message by pressing <b>9</b> .		

Ren	note commands	Operation details		
95	Change the Fax Forwarding or Paging settings			
	1 OFF	If you hear one long beep, the change has been accepted. If you hear three short beeps, you cannot change it because the conditions have not been met (for example, registering a fax forwarding or paging number). You can register your Fax Forwarding number by entering 4. Fax Forwarding number (see page 8-8). Once you have registered the number, the MFC will change to FAX_FORWARD: ON mode.		
	2 Fax Forwarding			
	3 Paging			
	4 Fax Forwarding number			
	6 Fax Storage ON	You can turn FAX STORAGE to ON (or OFF after you have retrieved or erased all your messages).		
	7 Fax Storage OFF			
96	Retrieve a fax			
	2 Retrieve all faxes	Enter the number of a remote fax machine to receive stored fax message(s). (See page 8-8.)		
	3 Erase faxes from the memory	If you hear one long beep, you can erase fax messages from the memory.		
97	Check the Receiving Status	You can check whether your MFC has received any FAX or VOICE messages. If		
	1 Fax	yes, you will hear one long beep. If no, you will hear three short beeps.		
	2 VOICE			
98	Change Receive Mode	If you hear one long beep, you can change		
	1 MSG CTR	the Receive Mode.		
	2 FAX/TEL			
	3 FAX ONLY	1		
90	Exit	After a long beep, you can exit Remote Retrieval.		

#### **Retrieving fax messages**

- 1 Dial vour fax number.
- 2 When your MFC answers, immediately enter your Remote Access Code (3 digits followed by  $\star$ ). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
- **3** As soon as you hear two short beeps, use the dial pad to press 962
- **4** Wait for the long beep, and then use the dial pad to enter the number of the remote fax machine where you want your fax messages sent to followed by ## (up to 20 digits).



- You cannot use Ӿ and **#** as dial numbers. However, press **#** if you want to store a pause.
- **5** Hang up after you hear your MFC beep. Your MFC will call the other machine, which will then print your fax messages.

#### Changing your Fax Forwarding number

You can change the default setting of your fax forwarding number from another telephone or fax machine using Touch Tone.

- 1 Dial your fax number.
- 2 When your MFC answers, immediately enter your Remote Access Code (3 digits followed by  $\star$ ). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
- **3** When you hear two short beeps, use the dial pad to press **954**.
- 4 Wait for the long beep, and then use the dial pad to enter the new number of the remote fax machine where you want your fax messages forwarded followed by ## (up to 20 digits).



**5** Hang up after you hear your MFC beep.



### Message Center mode

Message Center mode allows you to store up to 99 incoming voice messages that are a maximum of 3 minutes each in a memory. Voice messages are stored on a "first-come, first-served" basis. You can retrieve voice messages remotely. (See *Setting Fax Storage* on page 8-1.)

You must record an outgoing message in order to use the Message Center mode.

(See Recording Message Center Outgoing Message on page 9-2.)

#### Setting up the Message Center

You must set up the Message Center in the following order:

- Record Message Center Outgoing Message (MSG CTR OGM). (See Recording Message Center Outgoing Message on page 9-2.)
- 2 Press and hold a until it lights to activate the Message Center mode.

(See Activating Message Center mode on page 9-3 and Message indicator on page 9-3.)

#### **Recording Message Center Outgoing Message**

Recording the Message Center Outgoing Message (MSG CTR OGM) is the first step you need to follow before you can turn on the Message Center. Make sure your OGM is less than 20 seconds long.

- Press Menu/Set, 2, 7, 1.
   The LCD prompts you to choose an OGM.
- 2 Press to select MSG CTR OGM (not F/T OGM). Press Menu/Set.

SETUP	MSG	CTR
1.OGM		

- OGM MSG CTR OGM
- This is the only setting you can select if you want to turn on the Message Center.
- **3** Press (\*) to select RECORD OGM. Press Menu/Set.
- **4** Pick up the handset to record a message.

For example: Hello. We are unable to take your call at this time. Please leave a message after the signal. If you wish to send a fax, please press  $\times$  **5 1**, wait for fax tones, then press the Start button.

- 5 Replace the handset . The Message Center will play your OGM.
- 6 Press Stop/Exit.

#### Listening to Outgoing Message (OGM)

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 7, 1.
- 2 Press to select MSG CTR OGM (or F/T OGM). Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press (\*) to select PLAY OGM. Press Menu/Set. Adjust the volume by pressing Volume (\*)
- 4 Press Stop/Exit.

SETUP MSG CTR 1.OGM

#### Erasing Outgoing Message (OGM)

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **7**, **1**.
- 2 Press to select MSG CTR OGM (or F/T OGM). Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press ( ) to select ERASE OGM. Press Menu/Set.
- 4 Press 1 to erase the OGM.
   —OR—

Press 2 to exit without erasing.

5 Press Stop/Exit.

### Activating Message Center mode

Press and hold i until it lights and the LCD shows:

MC:MSG CTR

When (a) light is out, the Message Center is OFF. (See Setting up the Message Center on page 9-1.)

#### Message indicator

The ight flashes when you have *new* messages waiting for your review.

The LCD displays the total number of voice and fax messages stored in the Message Center memory.

VOICE:03	FAX:00
PLAIN	NORMAL

SETUP MSG CTR 1.0GM

#### Playing voice messages

Follow the steps below to listen to voice messages:

1 Press Play/Record.

Adjust the Volume by pressing (...).

All messages are played in the order they were recorded. The LCD shows the number of the current message, and the total number of messages.

If Caller ID information was received, the MFC beeps during the message and displays the Caller ID information for one second.

During playback, the LCD shows the time and date the message was recorded.

- Press \* (RWD) at the end of the message to repeat a message. Press # (FWD) to skip to the next message. You can press \* and # repeatedly until you reach the message you want to play.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

#### Printing a Fax Message

Once you print a new fax message stored in memory, it is erased from the memory automatically.

- **1** Press **Play/Record**. After two seconds, the fax machine begins to play voice messages.
- 2 If the Fax Storage is set to ON and there are fax messages in memory, the LCD shows:
- PRINT FAX 1.YES 2.NO
- **3** To print the faxes, press **1**. **—OR**—

Press 2 to exit without printing.

You can erase voice messages individually, or all at once.

#### To Erase Voice Messages Individually

1 Press Play/Record.

The MFC sounds a two-second beep and begins message playback. Each message is preceded by one long beep, and followed by two short beeps.

2 To erase a specific message, press **Erase** immediately after the two short beeps, or while the message is playing.

ERASE	THIS	MSG.?	)
1.YES	.NO		

**3** Press **1** to erase the message. —OR—

Press 2 to cancel.

4 Press Stop/Exit.

#### To erase messages all at once

- 1 Press Erase.
- 2 Press (\*) to select erasing all voice messages (VOICE), all document messages (FAX), or all voice and fax messages (MSG.).

Press Menu/Set.

- 3 Press 1 to erase. —OR— Press 2 to cancel.
- 4 Press Stop/Exit.

ERASE				
SELECI	. ↑	$\downarrow$	&	SET

#### Setting Maximum Time for incoming messages

Your MFC comes set to receive voice messages up to 30 seconds long. You can change this setting to 60, 120 or 180 seconds.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 7, 2.
- Press (\*) to select the maximum time setting for incoming messages (30, 60, 120 or 180 seconds).
  Press Menu/Set.
- **3** Press **Stop/Exit**.

#### **ICM Recording Monitor**

This feature lets you turn the speaker volume for voice messages ON or OFF. When you turn the monitor OFF, you will not hear messages as they come in.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 7, 3.
- 2 Use ( ) to select OFF (or ON). Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

SETUP	MSG	CTR
2.ICM	MAX.	.TIME

SETUP MSG CTR 3.ICM REC.MONITR

#### **Recording a conversation**

You can record a telephone conversation by pressing **Play/Record** during the conversation. Your recording can be as long as the Incoming Message Maximum Time. The other party will hear an intermittent beep while recording. To stop recording, press **Stop/Exit**. You cannot record a conversation using **Speaker Phone**.

# Record FAX/TEL Outgoing Announcement (F/T OGM)

This is the announcement played by your MFC (not an external TAD) when someone calls and your MFC is set to FAX/TEL receive mode. *Although callers hear your announcement, they cannot leave a message.* By choosing F/T OGM (not MSG CTR OGM) you can record the announcement using the same steps as for the Message Center outgoing message. (See *Recording Message Center Outgoing Message* on page 9-2.) You can also listen to and erase the F/T OGM the same way. (See *Listening to Outgoing Message (OGM)* on page 9-2 and *Erasing Outgoing Message (OGM)* on page 9-3.)

If you need to review the steps for setting up the FAX/TEL receive mode, see Chapter 5.



### MFC settings and activity

You need to set up the Transmission Verification Report and Activity Report Interval in the menu table.

Press Menu/Set, 2, 4, 1. —OR— Press Menu/Set, 2, 4, 2.

SETUP	REPORTS
1.TRAN	ISMISSION

SETUP REPORTS 2.ACT.INTERVAL

# Customizing the Transmission Verification Report

You can use the Transmission Report as proof that you sent a fax. This report lists the time and date of transmission and whether the transmission was successful (OK). If you select ON or ON+IMAGE, the report will print for every fax you send.

When the feature is OFF, the Report will only print it there is a transmission error. (NG).

If you send a lot of faxes to the same place, you may need more than the job numbers to know which faxes you must send again. Selecting ON+IMAGE or OFF+IMAGE will print a section of the fax's first page on the report to help you remember.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **2**, **4**, **1**.
- 2 Press () to select OFF, OFF+IMAGE, ON or ON+IMAGE. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

SETUP REPORTS 1.TRANSMISSION

#### Setting the Fax Activity Report Interval

You can set the MFC to print activity reports at specific intervals (every 50 faxes, 6, 12 or 24 hours, 2 or 7 days). If you set the interval to OFF, you can print the report by following the Steps on the next page. The default setting is EVERY 50 FAXES.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 2, 4, 2.
- **2** Press ( ) to choose an interval. Press Menu/Set. (If you choose 7 days, the LCD will

SETUP	REPORTS
2.ACT.	INTERVAL
	ͲͲͲϘϚͶΛΤ

EVERY 50 FAXES

ask you to choose a day on which to begin the 7-day countdown.)

- **3** Enter the time to begin printing in 24-hour format. Press Menu/Set. (For example: enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)
- Press Stop/Exit.
- <sup>9</sup> If you select 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days, the MFC will print the report at the selected time and then erase all jobs from its memory. If the MFC's memory becomes full with 200 jobs before the time you selected has passed, the MFC will print the Activity Report early and then erase all jobs from memory. If you want an extra report before it is due to print, you can print it without erasing the jobs from memory.

#### **Printing reports**

Five reports are available:

PRINT REPORTS 1.HELP LIST	Prints the Help List so you can see at-a-glance how to quickly program your MFC.
PRINT REPORTS 2.AUTO DIAL	Lists names and numbers stored in the Speed Dial memory, in numerical order.
PRINT REPORTS 3.FAX ACTIVITY	Lists information about the last incoming and outgoing faxes. (TX means Transmit.) (RX means Receive.)
PRINT REPORTS 4.TRANSMISSION	Prints a Transmission Verification Report for your last transmission.
PRINT REPORTS 5.USER SETTINGS	Lists settings for GENERAL SETUP, SETUP RECEIVE, SETUP SEND, SETUP REPORTS, SETUP MSG CTR, TEL SERVICE and REMOTE FAX OPT.

#### To print a report

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 6.
- 2 Press (\*) to select the report you want.

Press Menu/Set.

#### -OR-

Enter the number of the report you want to print. For example, press **1** to print the Help List.

**3** Press **Fax Start**.

SELECT 1	↓ 1	&	SET
6.PRINT	RE	ΡO	RTS



### Using the MFC as a copier

Your MFC allows you to make high-quality photocopies and transparencies. Copies can be in black and white or full color. Always make sure you have paper in the paper tray before making copies. Do not pull on the paper while copying is in progress.



Incoming faxes cannot be received on paper or into the memory while the MFC is copying.

#### Single or multiple copies

You can make multiple copies using the scanner glass. Multiple copies will be stacked (all copies of page 1, then all copies of page 2, and so on). Use the **Copy Options** key to choose more settings. (See *Using Copy Options key (Temporary Settings)* on page 11-3.)

1 Lift the Document Cover.



- **2** Using the document guidelines on the left, center the original face down on the scanner glass and close the document cover.
- **3** Using the dial pad, enter the number of copies you want (up to 99). For example, press **3 8** for 38 copies.

# 4 Press Black Copy or Color Copy.

The MFC will start scanning the original.

#### Out of memory message

If the memory becomes full before you are making copies, the LCD will show this message:

OUT OF MEMORY PLAIN NORMAL

If the OUT OF MEMORY message appears, press **Stop/Exit** to cancel. You will need to clear some jobs from the memory before you can continue.

To gain extra memory, you can erase fax and voice messages. (See *To erase messages all at once* on page 9-5.)

\_OR\_

Print the faxes that are in the memory. (See *Printing a fax from the memory* on page 5-8.)

When you get an OUT OF MEMORY message, you may be able to make copies if you first print incoming faxes in the memory to restore the memory to 100%.

### Using Copy Options key (Temporary Settings)

When you want to change the settings only for the next copy, use the **Copy Options** key.



You can use different combinations. For example, if you want to copy a photograph on glossy paper with best print quality, press **Copy Options** to select BEST in the Quality setting and GLOSSY in the Paper Type setting.

Press Copy Options	Menu Selections	Options select + MenuSet	Factory Setting	Page
Сору	NO. OF COPIES:01	NO. OF COPIES:01 (01-99)	01	
Options	QUALITY	FAST/NORMAL/BEST	NORMAL	11-5
	ENLARGE/REDUCE	25%/50%/ 78% 94% A4→LTR/100%/ 104% EXE→LTR/ 150%/200%/400%/ ZOOM	100%	11-6
	PAPER TYPE	PLAIN/INK JET/ GLOSSY (4-COLOR <b>or</b> 3-COLOR)/ TRANSPARENCY	PLAIN	11-7
	PAPER SIZE	LETTER/LEGAL/A4/ 4"(W)×6"(H)	LETTER	11-8
	BRIGHTNESS	+	+	11-8
	PAGE LAYOUT	OFF(1 IN 1)/ 2 IN 1/4 IN 1/ POSTER	OFF (1 IN 1)	11-9

After you finish choosing settings using the **Copy Options** key, the LCD shows:

PRESS COPY OR  $\uparrow \downarrow$  FOR NEXT OPT.

Press ( to select more settings.

#### -OR-

#### Press Black Copy or Color Copy

if you're finished choosing settings.

These settings are temporary, and the MFC returns to its default settings 60 seconds after it finishes copying. If you want to reuse these temporary settings, you must start copying the next original on the scanner glass before the 60 seconds expire.

#### No. of Copies

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Copy Options and (\*) to select NO. OF COPIES:01.

SELECT NO. OF		$\uparrow$	$\downarrow$	&	SET
NO.	OF	C	OP	ΙE	S:01

**3** Press the number of copies using the dial pad.

#### Press Menu/Set.

4 To start copying now, press Black Copy or Color Copy. —OR—\_\_

Press ( for more settings.

#### Quality

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Copy Options and (\*) to select QUALITY. Press Menu/Set.

QUALITY	
NORMAL	

- **3** Press ( to select NORMAL, FAST or BEST. Press Menu/Set.
- To start copying now, press Black Copy or Color Copy.
   —OR—

Press (\*) for more settings.

NORMAL	Recommended mode for ordinary printouts. Good copy quality with adequate copy speed.
FAST	Fast copy speed and lowest ink consumption. Use FAST to save time (documents to be proof-read, large documents or many copies).
BEST	Use this mode to copy precise images such as photographs. BEST uses the highest resolution and slowest speed.

#### Enlarge/Reduce

You can select the following enlargement or reduction ratios. ZOOM allows you to enter a ratio from 25% to 400%.

Press Copy Options	100%	
and to select ENLARGE / REDUCE	94% A4 $\rightarrow$ LTR	
	78%	
	50%	
	25%	
	ZOOM	
	400%	
	200%	
	150%	
	104% EXE $\rightarrow$ LTR	

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Copy Options and (\*) to select ENLARGE/REDUCE. Press Menu/Set.

ENLARGE/REDUCE 100%

3 Press to select the enlargement or reduction ratio you want. Press Menu/Set.

-OR-

You can select ZOOM and press Menu/Set.

Use the dial pad to enter an enlargement or reduction ratio from 25% to 400%.

#### Press Menu/Set.

(For example, press 5 3 to enter 53%.)

#### 4 Press Black Copy or Color Copy. —OR—

Press (\*) for more settings.

Special Copy Options (2in1, 4in1 or Poster) are not available with Enlarge/Reduce.

#### Paper Type

You can change the paper type only for the next copy. Select the type of media that you are using to get the best print quality.

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Press Copy Options and (\*) to select PAPER TYPE. Press Menu/Set
- 3 Press () to select the type of paper you are using (PLAIN, INKJET, GLOSSY or TRANSPARENCY). Press Menu/Set
- 4 If you selected GLOSSY, press 💭 to select GLOSSY: 4-COLOR or GLOSSY: 3-COLOR. Press Menu/Set

The print quality of black ink depends on the type of glossy paper you are using. Black ink is used when you select GLOSSY: 4-COLOR. If the glossy paper you are using repels the black ink, select GLOSSY: 3-COLOR, which simulates black ink by combining the three ink colors.

5 Press Color Copy (or Black Copy). -OR-

Press ( ) for more settings.

You can change the default Paper Type setting at any time. (See Setting the Paper Type on page 4-1.)

#### Paper Size

You can change the paper size setting only for the next copy.

You can copy only on Letter, Legal, A4 and Post Card (4"X6") paper.

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Copy Options and (\*) to select PAPER SIZE. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press to select the size of paper you are using (LETTER, LEGAL, A4 or 4"(W)×6"(H)). Press Menu/Set.
- 4 Press Black Copy or Color Copy. —OR—

Press (\*) for more settings.

#### Brightness

You can adjust the copy brightness to make copies darker or lighter.

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press Copy Options and to select BRIGHTNESS. Press Menu/Set.

SELECT	Ŷ	$\downarrow$	&	SET
_∎			+	

3 Press <sup>(▲)</sup> to make a lighter copy. —OR—

Press to make a darker copy. Press **Menu/Set**.

4 Press Black Copy or Color Copy. —OR—\_\_\_

Press ( for more settings.

#### Page Layout

You can save paper by copying either two or four pages onto one page, or you can make a poster size copy.

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Press Copy Options and (\*) to select PAGE LAYOUT. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press to select 2 IN 1, 4 IN 1, POSTER (or OFF (1 IN 1)). Press Menu/Set.
- 4 Press Black Copy or Color Copy.

The MFC starts scanning the first page.

5 If you selected 2 IN 1 or 4 IN 1 in Step 4, put the next original on the scanner glass.

NEXT:PRESS SET	
END: PRESS COPY	

#### Press Menu/Set.

Repeat Step 5 for each page of the layout.

6 After all the pages of the original have been scanned, press **Black Copy** or **Color Copy** to end.

#### 2 in 1







#### Poster

You can make a poster size copy of a photograph.





For 2 in 1 or 4 in 1 copies, you cannot change the enlargement or reduction ratio or print on glossy paper.

For color 2 in 1 or 4 in 1 copies, you can use letter or A4 size paper. You cannot make more than one copy.

For POSTER copies, you cannot make more than one copy or use the Enlarge/Reduce setting.

# Changing the default copy settings

You can adjust the copy settings that are shown in the chart. These settings will stay until you change them again.

Submenu	Menu Selections	Options	Factory Settings
1.QUALITY	—	NORMAL	NORMAL
		BEST	
		FAST	
2.BRIGHTNESS	—	+	+
		+	
		+	
		+	
		+	
3.CONTRAST	—	+	+
		+	
		+	
		+	
		- • • • • •	
4.COLOR ADJUST	1.RED	R: +	R: +
		R: +	
		R: +	
		R: +	
		R: - ∎0000 +	
	2.GREEN	G: +	G: +
		G: +	
		G: +	
		G: - ∎∎□□□ +	
		G: -∎0000 +	
	3.BLUE	B: +	B: +
		B:- <b></b> +	
		B: +	
		B: - ∎∎□□□□ +	
		B: - ∎□□□□ +	

#### **Copy Quality**

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 3, 1.
- 2 Press to select NORMAL, BEST or FAST. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

#### Brightness

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **3**, **2**.
- 2 Press <sup>(▲)</sup> to make a lighter copy. —OR—

Press to make a darker copy. Press **Menu/Set**.

3 Press Stop/Exit.

#### Contrast

You can change the contrast to help an image look sharper and more vivid.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 3, 3.
- **2** Press (\*) to increase the contrast.
  - \_\_OR\_\_

COPY 3.CONTRAST

Press (,) to decrease the contrast. Press **Menu/Set**.

3 Press Stop/Exit.

COPY 1. OUALITY

COPY 2.BRIGHTNESS

#### **Color Adjustment**

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 3, 4.
- 2 Press (\*) to select RED, GREEN or BLUE.

#### Press Menu/Set.

- 4 Return to Step 2 to select the next color.

Press Stop/Exit.

COPY 4.COLOR ADJUST

# Legal limitations

Color reproductions of certain documents are illegal and may result in either criminal or civil liability. This memorandum is intended to be a guide rather than a complete listing of every possible prohibition. In case of doubt, we suggest that you check with counsel as to any particular questionable documents.

The following documents issued by the United States/Canadian Government or any of its Agencies may not be copied:

- Paper money
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Certificates of Deposit
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Selective Service or draft papers
- Passports
- United States/Canadian Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Food Stamps
- Immigration Papers
- Checks or drafts drawn by Governmental agencies
- Identifying badges or insignias

Copyrighted works cannot be copied. Sections of a copyrighted work can be copied for 'fair use.' Multiple copies would indicate improper use.

Works of art should be considered the equivalent of copyrighted works.

Licenses and Certificates of Title to motor vehicles may not be copied under certain state/provincial laws.

# **12** Walk-Up PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup>

### Introduction

Your Brother MFC includes three media drives (slots) to use with popular digital camera media: CompactFlash<sup>®</sup>, SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> and Memory Stick<sup>®</sup>.





	E

CompactFlash<sup>®</sup>

SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>

Memory Stick®

The PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> feature lets you print digital photos from your digital camera at high resolution to get photo quality printing.

#### PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> requirements

To avoid error conditions, please remember:

- The DPOF file on the media card must be in a valid format.
- The image file extension must be .JPG (Other image file extensions .JPEG, .TIF, .GIF and so on will not be recognized).
- Walk-up PhotoCaputure Center<sup>™</sup> printing must be performed separately from PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> operations using the PC. (Simultaneous operation is not available.)
- IBM Microdrive<sup>™</sup> is not compatible with the MFC.
- The MFC can read up to 999 files in a media card.
- Use only Smart media cards with a 3.3 voltage.
- When printing the INDEX or IMAGE, the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> will print all the valid images, even if one or more images have been corrupted. A portion of the corrupted image may be printed.

### **Basic flow**

- 1 Insert the media card firmly into the media drive (slot). (See *Getting started* on page 12-3.)
- 2 Print the index (Thumbnails) of all the images on your media card by selecting PRINT INDEX. The images will be numbered. (See *Printing the Index (Thumbnails)* on page 12-5.)
- **3** To print the images, select PRINT IMAGES. (See *Printing images* on page 12-6.)

You can change the settings for printing images, such as the number of Copies, Paper Type, Paper & Print Size, Print Quality, Brightness and True2Life<sup>®</sup> by selecting CHANGE SETTINGS.

(See Changing the settings for printing images on page 12-7.)

## **Getting started**

There are separate slots on your MFC, for a CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> card, a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> card and a Memory Stick<sup>®</sup>. Use only Smart media cards with a 3.3 voltage.

The left slot is for a CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> Card, the middle slot is for a Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> and the right is for a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> Card. Firmly insert the card into the appropriate slot.



Media Card Indicator Lights:

- LED light is ON, the media card is inserted properly.
- LED is OFF, the media card is not properly inserted.
- LED is BLINKING, the media card is being read or written to.



Do NOT unplug the power cord or remove the media card from the media drive (slot) while the MFC is reading or writing to the card (LED is blinking). You will loose your data or damage the card.

The MFC can only read one Media card at a time so do not insert more than one card. The settings that you want to use with the card will be kept until you take out the media card from the drive (slot), print images or press **Stop/Exit**.

- 1 Insert the media card firmly into the media drive (slot).
- 2 When you insert your media card into the proper slot, the LCD shows.

C.FLASH ACTIVE Press Copy Options key ----

The media active message will be shown for 60 seconds and then the display will return to standby mode (date and time). Even in that case, you can enter the PhotoCapture mode by pressing **Copy Options**.

#### 3 Press Copy Options.

The LCD scrolls:



(See Printing the Index (Thumbnails) on page 12-5.)

(See *Printing images* on page 12-6.)

(See Changing the settings for printing images on page 12-7.)

# **Printing the Index (Thumbnails)**

The PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> assigns numbers for images (such as No.1, No.2, No.3, and so on).



It does not recognize any other numbers or file names that your digital camera or PC have used to identify the pictures. You can print a thumbnail page (Index page with 6 or 4 images per line). This will show all the pictures on the media card.

- **1** Make sure you inserted the media card. Press **Copy Options**. (See page 12-3.)
- 2 Press (\*) to select PRINT INDEX. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press 💭 to select
  - 6 IMAGES/LINE or
  - 4 IMAGES/LINE.

Press Menu/Set.



4 Images/line

PRINT INDEX 6 IMAGES/LIN	्या
(*;;	
Index	

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow \&$  SET

PRINT INDEX

6 Images/line

**4** Press **Color Copy** to start printing.

Print time for 4 Images/line will be slower than 6 Images/line, but the quality is better. To print an image, see the next page.

# **Printing images**

Before you can print an individual image, you have to know the image number.

Print the Index first.

(See Printing the Index (Thumbnails) on page 12-5.)

- 1 Make sure you inserted the media card. Press **Copy Options**. (See page 12-3.)
- 2 Press (\*) to choose PRINT IMAGES. Press Menu/Set.

**3** Use the dial pad to enter the image number that you want to be printed from the Index page (Thumbnails).

SELECT  $\uparrow \downarrow \&$  SET PRINT IMAGES

ENTER & SET KEY IMG:1,3,6

Press **Menu/Set**. Repeat this step until you have entered all the image numbers that you want to print.

You can enter all the numbers at one time by using the  $\star$  key for a comma or the **#** key for hyphen.

(For example, Enter  $1 \div 3 \div 6$  - to print images No.1, No.3 and No.6. Enter **1#5** to print images No.1 to No.5).

After you have selected all the image numbers.
 Press Menu/Set twice.
 The LCD shows:

PRESS COLOR COPY OR  $\uparrow \downarrow$  FOR OPTION

5 To print, press Color Copy. —OR—

To change settings, press the LCD scrolls through the settings again. You can select these options by pressing and **Menu/Set**.

(See Changing the settings for printing images on page 12-7.)

# Changing the settings for printing images

You can change the settings for the number of Copies, Paper Type, Paper & Print Size, Print Quality, Brightness and True2Life<sup>®</sup> only for the next printed image.

Menu Selections	Options (1)	Options (2)	Factory Setting	Page
NO. OF COPIES XX	_	01-99	01	12-8
PAPER TYPE	PLAIN	_	PLAIN	12-8
	INK JET	INK JET		
	GLOSSY	GLOSSY:4-COLOR GLOSSY:3-COLOR		
	TRANSPARENCY	—	-	
PAPER&PRINT SIZE	LETTER LEGAL A4	PRINT SIZE 5"×3.5",6"×4", 7"×5",8"×10"	6"×4"	12-9
	4"(W)X6"(H)	ORIENTATION PORTRAIT LANDSCAPE	LANDSCAPE	
PRINT QUALITY	NORMAL	—	FINE	12-9
	FINE			
	РНОТО			
BRIGHTNESS	+	_	+	12-12
	+			
	+			
	+			
	+			
TRUE2LIFE	ON	_	OFF	12-13
	OFF			
### Menu selections

Make sure you have entered the image number that you want to be printed. (See page 12-6.)

#### Number of Copies

- 6 Press () to select NO. OF COPIES:01. Press Menu/Set
- 7 Use the dial pad to enter the number of copies you want. Press Menu/Set.
- 8 Press Color Copy to print. \_\_OR\_\_

Press (\*) for more settings.

## Paper Type

- 6 Press (\*) to select PAPER TYPE. Press Menu/Set
- 7 Press (\*) to select the type of paper you are using, (PLAIN, INK JET, GLOSSY or TRANSPARENCY). Press Menu/Set.
- 8 If you selected GLOSSY, press (\*) to select GLOSSY: 4-COLOR or GLOSSY: 3-COLOR. Press Menu/Set

The print quality of black ink depends on the type of glossy paper you are using. Black ink is used when you select 4-COLOR.

If the glossy paper you are using repels the black ink, select 3-COLOR, which simulates black ink by combining the three ink colors.

#### 9 Press Color Copy to print.

-OR-

Press ( ) for more settings.

#### Paper and Print Size

Make sure you have done Steps 1 to 5 on page 12-6.
Press to select PAPER&PRINT SIZE. Press Menu/Set.
Press to select the size of the paper you are using (LETTER, LEGAL, A4 or 4 " (W)X6 " (H)). Press Menu/Set.
If you select LETTER, LEGAL or A4,

press (\*) to select the print size (5"X 3.5", 6"X 4", 7"X 5" or 8"X 10"). Press **Menu/Set**, and go to Step 12.

**Printed Position** 



\*1 The printed position for 5"x 3.5" are different depending on the paper size you are using.

#### -OR-

If you selected 4"(W)X6"(H), go to Step 9.

**9** Load the post card with the top edge down and print side is towards you.



**10** Check the printed thumbnail image on the index sheet.



Some image taken by some cameras have the orientation information.

11 Press ( to select LANDSCAPE or PORTRAIT. Press Menu/Set.

The result of the output (4 " (W)X6 " (H))



12 Press Color Copy to print. —OR—

Press (\*) for more settings.

### **Print Quality**

- 6 Press (\*) to select PRINT QUALITY. Press Menu/Set.
- 7 Press (\*) to select NORMAL, FINE or PHOTO. Press Menu/Set.

NORMAL	Recommended mode for ordinary printouts. Good print quality with adequate print speed.
FINE	Better print quality than normal and faster copy speed than PHOTO.
РНОТО	Use this mode to print precise images such as photographs. PHOTO uses the highest resolution and slowest speed.

8 Press Color Copy to print.

-OR-

Press ( ) for more settings.

#### Brightness

Make sure you have done Steps 1 to 5 on page 12-6.

- 6 Press (\*) to select BRIGHTNESS. Press Menu/Set.
- 7 Press to make a lighter print.

Press to make a darker print. Press **Menu/Set**.

8 Press Color Copy to print.

-OR-

Press ( for more settings.

### Color enhancement (True2Life®)

You can turn on the color enhancement (True2Life $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{B}}}$ ) feature to print more vivid images.

If you want to customize the White Balance, Sharpness or Color Density, press **Menu/Set**, **4**, **5**. (See *Color enhancement (True2Life*<sup>®</sup>) on page 12-17.)

- 6 Press ( to select TRUE2LIFE. Press Menu/Set.
- 7 Press (\*) to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.
- 8 Press Color Copy to print. —OR—

Press ( for more settings.

- The PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> prints only in color. Black & White printing and Enlargement/Reduction is not available when using this feature.
  - The PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> returns to its default setting when you take out the media card, print images or press **Stop/Exit**.

# **DPOF** printing

DPOF stands for Digital Print Order Format.

Major Digital Camera manufacturers (Canon Inc., Eastman Kodak Company, Fuji Photo Film Co. Ltd. and Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd. and Sony Corporation.) created this standard to make it easier to print images from a digital camera.

If your digital camera supports DPOF printing, you will be able to select on the Digital Camera display the images and number of copies you want to print.

When the memory card (CompactFlash<sup>®</sup>, SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup>) with DPOF information is put into your MFC, you can print the selected image easily.

1 Insert your media card into the proper drive (slot).

C.FLASH ACTIVE Press Copy Options key ----

The media active message will be shown for 60 seconds and then the display will return to standby mode (date and time). Even in that case, you can enter the PhotoCapture mode by pressing **Copy Options**.

- 2 Press Copy Options.
- **3** Press ( ) to select PRINT IMAGES to select individual images. Press Menu/Set.
- **4** If there is a DPOF file on the card, the LCD shows:

DPOF	PRINT
1.YES	3 2.NO

5 Press 1 to select 1.YES. Press Color Copy.

PRESS COLOR COPY OR  $\uparrow \downarrow$  FOR OPTION

If you want to print an Index (thumbnails) or choose the images and their print options now, select 2.NO.

6 Press Color Copy to print.

#### \_\_OR\_\_

Press (\*) to change the settings for the number of Copies, Paper Type, Paper & Print Size, Print Quality, Brightness or True2Life<sup>®</sup>.

(See Changing the settings for printing images on page 12-7.)

# Changing the default settings

You can adjust the Print Quality, Print Size, Brightness, Contrast, True2Life<sup>®</sup> and Scan to Card settings, that are shown in the chart. These settings will remain set until you change them again.

Press **Menu/Set**, **4**, followed by the number of the setting you want to change. (See details on the following pages.)

Submenu	Menu Selections	Options (1)	Options (2)	Factory Settings
1.PRINT QUALITY	—	NORMAL	_	FINE
		FINE		
		PHOTO		
2.PRINT SIZE	—	5"×3.5"	_	б "×4 "
		6 "×4 "		
		7 "×5 "		
		8"×10"		
3.BRIGHTNESS	—	+	—	+
		+		
		+		
		+		
		- • • • • • • •		
4.CONTRAST	—	+	[ —	+
		+		
		+		
		+		
		- • • • • • • •		
5.TRUE2LIFE	ON	1.WHITE BALANCE	+	(- = = = = = +)
			+	
			+	
			+	
			- ∎0000 +	
		2.SHARPNESS	+	(- = = = = = +)
			+	
			+	
			+	
			- ∎0000 +	
		3.COLOR DENSITY	+	(- = = = = = +)
			+	
			+	
			+	
			- = 0 0 0 0 +	
	OFF	—	_	OFF
6.SCAN TO CARD	—	PDF	-	PDF
(See How to scan using Windows <sup>®</sup> on page 15-1.)		JPEG		

## **Print Quality**

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **4**, **1**.
- 2 Press to select NORMAL, FINE or PHOTO.
  Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

## **Print Size**

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 4, 2.
- 2 Press to select 5"×3.5", 6"×4", 7"×5" or 8"×10". Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press Stop/Exit.

## Brightness

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **4**, **3**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select BRIGHTNESS. Press Menu/Set.
- 3 Press <sup>●</sup> to make a lighter print. -OR-

```
Press  to make a darker print.
Press Menu/Set.
```

4 Press Stop/Exit.

## Contrast

You can choose the contrast setting. More Contrast will make an image look sharper and more vivid.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **4**, **4**.
- 2 Press () to select CONTRAST. Press Menu/Set.
- Press to increase the contrast.
   OR—
   Press to decrease the contrast.

Press Menu/Set.

4 Press Stop/Exit.

PHOTOCAPTURE 2.PRINT SIZE

PHOTOCAPTURE 3.BRIGHTNESS

PHOTOCAPTURE 4.CONTRAST

# Color enhancement (True2Life®)

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **4**, **5**.
- 2 Press (\*) to select TRUE2LIFE. Press Menu/Set.

PHOTOCAPTURE 5.TRUE2LIFE

**3** Press () to select ON (or OFF). Press Menu/Set.

#### If you select ON, you can customize the White Balance,

- Sharpness or Color Density.
- 4 If you selected ON,

Press () to select WHITE BALANCE.

Press Menu/Set.

\_\_OR\_\_

To skip the White Balance.

Press () to select SHARPNESS or COLOR DENSITY.

- 5 Press (\*) to adjust the degree of White Balance. Press Menu/Set.
- 6 Repeat Step 4 and Step 5 to adjust the degree of Sharpness and Color Density.

\_\_OR\_\_

Press Stop/Exit.

#### White Balance

This setting adjusts the hue of the white areas of an image. Lighting, Camera settings and other influences will effect the appearance of white. The white areas of a picture may be slightly pink, yellow or some other color. By using this adjustment you can correct this effect and bring the white areas back to pure white.

#### Sharpness

This setting enhances the detail of an image. It is similar to adjusting the fine focus on a camera. If the image is not in true focus and you cannot see the fine details of the picture, then adjust the sharpness.

#### Color Density

This setting adjusts the total amount of color in the image. You can increase or decrease the amount of color in an image to improve a washed out or weak picture.

## **Understanding the Error Messages**

Once you are familiar with the types of errors that can occur while you're using the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup>, you can easily identify and troubleshoot any difficulties.

When an error message appears on the LCD, the MFC will beep to get your attention.

MEDIA ERROR—This message will appear if you insert a media card that is either bad or not formatted, or when there is a problem with the media drive. To clear this error, take out the media card.

NO <code>FILE</code>—This message will appear if you try to access the media card in the drive (slot) does not contain a .JPG file.

OUT OF MEMORY—This message will appear if you are working with images that are too large for the MFC's memory.

# Using PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from your PC

You can access the media card that is in the media drive (slot) of the MFC from your PC.

See Using PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from your PC. (See Using the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from your PC on page 20-1 and Using the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from a Macintosh<sup>®</sup> on page 21-21.)

# Using PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> for scanning originals

You can scan the originals into a media card. (See *Scan to Card* on page 15-18.)

# 13 Using the MFC as a printer

# Using the Brother MFC-4820C printer driver

A Printer Driver is software that translates data from the format used by a computer into the format required by a particular printer, using a printer command language or page description language.

The printer drivers are on the CD-ROM we have supplied. Install the drivers first by following the Quick Setup Guide. Also, the latest printer driver can be downloaded from the Brother Solutions Center at:

http://solutions.brother.com

# Features

This MFC offers many features you'll find in a high quality ink jet printer.

**Fast Printing Speed**—Using Fast mode, you can print up to 11 pages per minute in full color, and up to 13 pages per minute in black.

**Brilliant High Quality Output**—Printing at 2400 x 1200 dpi resolution on glossy paper gives you highest resolution output.

**Beautiful Elaborate Output**—You can use 2 in 1, Watermark printing, True2Life<sup>®</sup> technology and other features to get high quality printouts.

**Low Running Cost**—Whenever you run out of a particular color ink, you will only have to replace the cartridge that's empty.

**USB**—Universal Serial Bus Interface provides fast communication with your computer.

**Straight Paper Path**—The MFC can print on many types of paper. Plain paper, inkjet paper, glossy paper, transparencies and envelopes. Use the appropriate type of paper to avoid paper jams.

For complete information about what kinds of paper to use with the MFC, please See *Paper* on page 2-1.

# Choosing the right type of paper

To get high quality printing using your MFC, it's very important to select the right type of paper. Be sure to read Chapter 2 Paper in this Guide before you select and purchase paper for the MFC.

# How to print your document

When the MFC receives data from your computer, it begins printing by picking up paper from the paper tray. The paper tray can feed many types of paper and envelopes.

- 1 From your computer select the Print command. If your computer is also connected to any other printers, select Brother MFC-4820C USB Printer as your printer driver from the Print or Print Settings menu in your software application, and then click on OK to begin printing.
- **2** Your computer sends a print command and data to the MFC. The LCD shows RECEIVING DATA.
- **3** When the MFC finishes printing all the data, the LCD shows the date and time.



You can select the paper size, and orientation in your application software.

If your application software does not support your custom paper size, select the next larger paper size.

Then adjust the print area by changing the right and left margins in your application software.

# Simultaneous printing and faxing

Your MFC can print from your computer while sending or receiving a fax, or while scanning a document into the computer. Fax sending will not be stopped during PC printing.

# Clearing data from the memory

If the LCD shows DATA REMAINS, you can clear the data that is left in the printer memory by pressing **Stop/Exit**.

# **Checking the Print Quality**

If you want to check the print quality and find out how to improve it, See *How to improve print quality* on page 23-9.



# Printer driver settings

You can change the following printer settings when you print from your computer:

- Media Type/Quality (Speed)
- Page Layout
- Near Edge Print
- Color Matching/Halftone
- Color Enhancement (True2Life<sup>®</sup>)
- Scaling
- Watermark
- Print Date & Time
- Quick Print Setup

# How to access the printer driver settings

- 1 Select **Print** from the **File** menu in your application software.
- 2 Select Brother MFC-4820C USB Printer as your printer and click Properties. The Brother MFC-4820C USB Printer dialog box will appear.
- The way you access the printer driver settings depends on your operating system and software applications.
- The screens shown in this section are from Windows<sup>®</sup> 98 Second Edition. The screens on your Computer may vary depending on your Windows Operating System.

# **Basic tab**

Brother MFC-4820C USB Printer on BR	rother MFC-4820C USB Printer on BRUSB: Properties				
Basic Advanced Support					
ABC	Media Type Quality Paper Size	Plan Paper	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1	
Letter 8 k x 11 in	Påge Layout Border Line Orientation Copies	Normal Norma Potrak Candicape Constant Reverse Order	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	2	
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print operation the ink cattridges are empty.		Default     About       ancel     Apply	· · · · ·	3	

- 1 Select the Media Type and Quality.
- 2 Select the Paper Size, Page Layout, Border Line (if any), Orientation, number of Copies, the page order and Near Edge Print.
- Click the Apply button to apply your selected settings.
   To return to the default settings, click the Default button, then click the Apply button.
- \* This area shows the current settings of Quality, Paper Size, Page Layout, Orientation, Collate/Reverse Order, Near Edge Print and Color/Grayscale.

## Media Type

To achieve the best print results, the media being printed on should be selected in the driver. The MFC changes the way it prints, depending on the selected media type.

Plain Paper Inkjet Paper Glossy Paper (4 color) Glossy Paper (3 color) Transparencies

The print quality of black ink depends on the type of glossy paper you are using. Black ink is used when you select *Glossy Paper (4 color)*. If the glossy paper you are using repels the black ink, select *Glossy Paper (3 color)*, which simulates black ink by combining the three ink colors.

## Quality

The quality selection allows you to choose the print resolution you want for your document. Print quality and speed are related. The higher the quality the longer it will take to print the document. The quality selections that are available will vary depending on the media type you select.

- Photo: 2400 x 1200 dpi. Use this mode to print precise images such as photographs. This is the highest resolution and slowest speed.
- S.Fine (Super Fine): 1200 x 1200 dpi. Use this mode to print precise text and photographs. Since the print data is much larger than normal mode, the processing time, data transfer time and print time will be longer.
- Fine: 600 x 600 dpi. Better print quality than Normal mode and faster print speed than Super Fine.
- **Normal:** 600 x 300 dpi. Good print quality with typical print speed.
- **Fast:** 600 x 150 dpi. The fastest print mode and the lowest ink consumption. Use this mode to print large volume documents or a document for proofing.

Media Type	Color/Grayscale	Print Quality Selection
Plain Paper	Color/Grayscale	Fast, Normal, Fine, S.Fine
Inkjet Paper	Color	Fine, S.Fine, Photo
	Grayscale	Fine, <b>S.Fine</b> , Photo
Glossy Paper (4 or 3 color)	Color	S.Fine, Photo
	Grayscale	S.Fine, Photo
Transparencies	Color/Grayscale	Fine, S.Fine

The factory settings are shown in bold.

# **Bi-Directional Printing**

When **Bi-Directional Printing** is selected, the print heads print in both directions and offer faster print speeds. When not selected, the print heads will only print in one direction to provide higher quality printouts.



## Paper Size

The **Paper Size** selection provides a large selection of standard paper sizes. If you wish, you can create a custom size ranging from 3.5" x 5" ( $89 \times 127$  mm) to 8.5" x 14" ( $216 \times 355.6$  mm). From the drop-down box, select the **Paper Size** you are using.

Paper Size	Letter	-

You can enter custom size by selecting *User Defined*. Select the proper paper thickness to improve the quality of your output.

User Defi	ned Size						×
<u>C</u> ustom [	ocument 9	òize					
						•	
<u>W</u> id	h	[88.9	21	6]	210		
<u>H</u> eig	ht	[ 127	35	5.6]	29		
Unit		• <u>m</u> m		0	jnch		
Pap	er <u>T</u> hicknes	s					
		Regula	r			•	
		<u>5</u> a	Ve		<u>D</u> elete		
OK		Cancel			H	elp	

#### Page Layout

The **Page Layout** selection can reduce the image size of a page allowing multiple pages to be printed on one sheet of paper or enlarging the image size for printing one page on multiple sheets of paper. If you are using Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me, the 4 in 1 layout is not available.

#### **Border Line**

When printing multiple pages on one sheet with the **Page Layout** feature, you can choose to have a solid border, dashed border or no border around each page on the sheet.

Page <u>L</u> ayout	2 in 1	<b>_</b>
<u>B</u> order Line	None	•

**Orientation** selects the position of how your document will be printed (**Portrait** or **Landscape**).

<u>O</u> rientation	<ul> <li>Portrait</li> <li>Landscape</li> </ul>
Portrait (Vertical)	Landscape (Horizontal)
ABC	

# Copies

The **Copies** selection sets the number of copies that will be printed (1 to 999).

#### Collate

With the **Collate** check box selected, one complete copy of your document will be printed and then repeated for the number of copies you selected. If the **Collate** check box is not selected, then each page will be printed for all the copies selected before the next page of the document is printed.

#### **Reverse Order**

Reverse Order prints the pages of your document in the opposite order.



# Near Edge Print

**Near Edge Print** feature expands the printable area at the bottom edge of the paper up to 0.02 inch (0.5 mm). Print time will be slightly slower. Available for Letter, A4, Postcard and Index Card paper. Not available for transparencies.



# Advanced tab

123	4 /			
Brother /HFC- XXXX USP Printe Basic Advanced Support	on BRUSB: Prope	rties	?×	
Auto	Color/Grayscale	<ul> <li>Color</li> <li>Grayscale</li> </ul>		
	Image Type	<ul> <li>Auto</li> <li>Photo</li> <li>Graphics</li> </ul>		
	Color Enhancer	C <u>C</u> ustom nent (True2Life)	Setting	
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print operations when one or more of Default the ink catridges are empty.				
-	OK	Cancel <u>A</u>	Apply Help	

To return to the default settings, click the **Default** button.

Change the tab settings by selecting one of the following icons:

- 1.Color
- 2.Scaling
- 3.Watermark
- 4. Device Options

## Color

#### Color/Grayscale

This selection allows a color document to be printed in black and white using gray scale.



#### Image Type

The printer driver will select the most suitable color matching and half tone method, depending on your image type. Generally, text and business graphics are printed vividly and photographic images are printed softly.

- **Auto:** The printer driver automatically selects the image type.
- **Photo:** Select this mode for photographic images.
- **Graphics:** Select this mode for documents that contain text or business graphics (charts or clip art).
- **Custom:** If you want to select the color matching and halftone method, manually select this mode.

Image Type	Auto
	C Photo
	C Graphics
	C Custom

#### **Custom Image Type**

You can select the color matching method manually. Select the best one for your document.

Brother MFC- XXXX USB Printer on BRUSB: Properties					
Basic Advanced Support					
<b>T</b>	1				
Custom	Color/Grayscale	C Color C Grayscale			
	Image Type	C Auto C Photo Graphics C Qustom			
	Custom Image	: Type			
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print the ink catridges are empty.	oper	g 야 Natch Monitod 야 Natural 야 Vivid			
	Halftone Patte	ern C Diffusion C Digher			
	ОК	Cancel Default			

#### **Match Monitor**

Color is adjusted to get the closest color match to the PC monitor.

- **Natural:** Suitable for photographic images. The color is adjusted to print a more natural color.
- **Vivid:** Suitable for business graphics such as charts, graphics and text. The color is adjusted to give more vivid color.

#### **Halftone Pattern**

The MFC can use two methods (**Diffusion** or **Dither**) to arrange where to place dots to express halftones. There are some predefined patterns set for this and you can select which one to use for your document. Select the appropriate method.

- Diffusion: Dots are placed at random to create the halftones. This method of printing is more suitable for printing photographs that have delicate shades and graphics.
- Dither: Dots are arranged in a pre-defined pattern to make halftones. This type of printing is more suitable to printing graphics that have definite color boundaries or for printing charts such as business charts.



Some halftone settings cannot be selected with certain combinations of Media Type and Quality selections.

#### Color Enhancement (True2Life®)

Selecting **Color Enhancement** (**True2Life**<sup>®</sup>) enables the **True2Life**<sup>®</sup> feature. This feature analyzes your image to improve quality sharpness, white balance and color density. This process may take several minutes depending on the size of the image and the specifications of your computer.

Brother MFC-XXXX USB Printe	r on BRUSB: Proper	ties	? ×
Basic Advanced Support			
📑 🐴 🖉 🔫			
Auto	Color/Grayscale	<ul> <li>Cojor</li> <li>Grayscale</li> </ul>	
	Image Type	C Auto C Photo C Graphics	
		C <u>C</u> ustom	Setting
	Color Enhancem	ent (True2Life)	Setting
Color Enha	ncement		<u>×</u>
MFC will stop Color/I the ink cartidges are		Color Density White Balance Sharpness I Auto Image Er	0
		Brightness Contrast	-20 0 +20 0 • • • • 0 • • •
		Red Green Blue	-20 0 +20 0 * 0 *
OK	Cancel	<u>D</u> efault	Help

#### Color Density

This setting adjusts the total amount of color in the image. You can increase or decrease the amount of color in an image to improve a washed out or weak picture.

#### White Balance

This setting adjusts the hue of the white areas of an image. Lighting, camera settings and other influences will effect the appearance of white. The white areas of a picture may be slightly pink, yellow or some other color. By using this adjustment you can correct this effect and bring the white areas back to pure white.

#### Sharpness

This setting enhances the detail of an image. It is similar to adjusting the fine focus on a camera. If the image is not in true focus and you can not see the fine details of the picture, then adjust the sharpness.

#### Auto Image Enhance

**Auto Image Enhance** allows individual adjustment of picture settings to improve the printed image and analyzes data from surrounding or neighboring pixels in the original.

#### Brightness

This setting adjusts the brightness of the whole image. To lighten or darken the image move the scroll bar to the left or right.

#### Contrast

This setting adjusts the contrast of an image. This will make darker areas darker and lighter areas lighter. Increase the contrast when you want an image to be clearer. Decrease the contrast when you want an image to be more subdued.

#### Red

Increases the intensity of the **Red** color to make the image redder.

#### Green

Increase the intensity of the **Green** color to make the image greener.

#### Blue

Increase the intensity of the Blue color to make the image bluer.

## Scaling

You can change the print size of your document with the **Scaling** feature.

Brother MFC-XXXX USB Printer	on BRUSB: Properties		?×
Basic Advanced Support	Scaling • Off • Fit to Paper Size 	Leiter	
the ink cartridges are empty.			<u>D</u> efault
	OK Cance	al <u>A</u> pply	Help

- Check Off if you want to print the document as it appears on your screen.
- Check Fit to Paper Size, if your document has an unusual size, or if you have only the standard size paper.
- Check **Free** if you want to reduce the size.
- Check **Mirror Print** to reverse the data from left to right.

#### Watermark

You can place a logo or text into your document as a Watermark. You can select one of the preset Watermarks, or you can use a bitmap file or text file that you have created.

Check **Use Watermark**, and then select the watermark you want to use.

Brother MFC-XXXX USB Printer	on BRUSB: Propertie	s		?×
Basic Advanced Support				
<b>*</b> \Lambda 📝 🤿	P			
Letter	□ Use Watermark			
8 ½ x 11 in	Select <u>W</u> atermark			
	CONFIDENTIAL			Edit
	DRAFT			Dejete
				New
	Custom Page Setting			
	Page	Title		
Print Watermar <u>k</u>			_	Deleje
On all pages 💌				
	Page	Title		Add
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print the ink cartridges are empty.	operations when one or n	iore of		<u>D</u> efault
	OK	Cancel	Apply	Help

#### In background

Check **In background** with the Watermark to print the watermark image in the background of your document. If this feature is not checked then the Watermark will be printed on top of your document.

## In Outline Text (Window® 2000 Professional/XP Only)

Check In Outline Text if you only want to print an outline of the watermark.

#### **Print Watermark**

The Print Watermark feature offers the following print choices:

- On all pages
- On first page only
- From second page
- Custom

#### Watermark Style

You can change the Watermark's size and position on the page by selecting the Watermark, and clicking the **Edit** button. If you want to add a new Watermark, click the **New** button, and then select **Text** or **Bitmap** in the **Watermark Style**.



#### Watermark Text

Enter your Watermark text into the **Text** Box, and then select the **Font**, **Size**, **Color** and **Style**.

#### Watermark Bitmap

Enter the file name and location of your bitmap image in the **File** box, or **Browse** for the file location. You can also set the scaling size of the image.

#### Position

This setting offers you the control for where the Watermark is to be positioned on the page.

## **Device Options**

Lets you set the following Printer Functions:

Brother MFC-XXXX USB Printer on BRUSB: Properties	×
Basic Advanced Support	
Printer Function	
Quick Print Setup	
☐ <u>P</u> rint Date & Time	
Setting	
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print operations when one or more of	
the ink catridges are empty.	
OK Cancel Apply Help	

#### Print Date & Time

When enabled the **Print Date and Time** feature will print the date and time on your document from your computer's system clock.

Date & Time		×
Date & Time	Format Date Time Font Position	Tue 17 Apr 2001           19:49:43           Fogt
	⊙ Tob	C Bottom
	Background © Transparer © Opague	nt Color
OK	Cancel	Default

Click the **Setting** button to change the **Date** and **Time** format, and the **Position** and **Font**. To include a background with the **Date** and **Time**, select **Opaque**. When **Opaque** is selected, you can click on the **Color** button to change the color of the **Date** and **Time** background.

The **Date** and **Time** in the selection box shows the format that will be printed. The actual **Date** and **Time** printed on your document is automatically retrieved from the settings of your computer.

#### **Quick Print Setup**

Brother MFC- XXXX USB Printer on BR	RUSB: Properties
Basic Advanced Support	
<b>T</b>	
Printer Fynction Print Date & Time Quick Print Setup	Quick Pint Setup
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print operation	ons when one or more of
the ink cartridges are empty.	<u>D</u> efault
	OK Cancel Apply Help

The **Quick Print Setup** feature allows you to quickly select driver settings. To view settings, simply click your mouse button on the task tray icon. This feature can be set to **ON** or **OFF** from the **Device Options**.



# Support tab

The **Support** Tab provides driver version and setting information. In addition there are links to the **Brother Solutions Center** and the Driver Update Web sites.

Click the Support tab to display the following screen:



#### **Brother Solutions Center**

The **Brother Solutions Center** is a Web site offering information about your Brother product including FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions), User Guides, Driver Updates and Tips for using your machine.

#### Web Update

**Web Update** checks the Brother web site for updated drivers, and automatically downloads and updates the printer driver on your computer.

#### **Check Setting**

The **Check Setting** selection displays a list of your current driver settings.

# **Thow to scan using** Windows®

The scanning operations and drivers will be different depending on your operating system.

#### For Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me and 2000 Professional

The MFC uses a TWAIN Compliant driver for scanning documents from your applications. (See Scanning a document (For Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me and 2000 Professional) on page 15-1 and TWAIN compliant on page 15-1.)

#### For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP

Use Windows<sup>®</sup> Imaging Acquisition (WIA) for scanning documents. (See Scanning a document (For Windows® XP only) on page 15-10.)



For ScanSoft<sup>®</sup>, PaperPort<sup>®</sup> and TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR (See Using ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> and TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR on

page 15-20.)

# Scanning a document (For Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me and 2000 Professional)

## **TWAIN** compliant

The Brother Multi-Function Link® Pro software includes a TWAIN compliant scanner driver. TWAIN drivers meet the standard universal protocol for communicating between scanners and software applications. This means that not only can you scan images directly into the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> viewer that Brother included with your MFC, but you can also scan images directly into hundreds of other software applications that support TWAIN scanning. These applications include popular programs like Adobe<sup>®</sup> Photoshop<sup>®</sup>. Adobe<sup>®</sup> PageMaker<sup>®</sup>, CorelDraw<sup>®</sup> and many more.

#### How to access the Scanner

- 1 Open the software application (ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup>) to scan a document.
- The instructions for scanning in this Guide are for when you use ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 8.0 SE.
- 2 Select Scan from the File drop-down menu or select the Scan button. The Scan pane appears in the left panel.
- **3** Select **TWAIN\_32 Brother MFL Pro Scanner** from the **Scanner** drop-down list box.
- 4 Click the Scan button.

The **TWAIN\_32 Brother MFL Pro Scanner Setup** dialog box will appear:

AIN_32 Brother MFL Pro Scanner Setup - 2.0 -	
Scan :	
C Photo	PreScan
C Web	Width: 8.18 inches
C Lext	2454 pixel:
	Height : 10.75 inche: 3225 pixel:
Resolution	Data Size : 22.6 ME
300 x 300 dpi	
Scan Type	- 1 - 1
24bit Color	
Brightness	
[0	
Contrast	
0	<u>S</u> tart
	L
ocument Size	<u>H</u> elp
Letter 8 1/2 x 11 in 📃 💌	<u>D</u> efault
O <u>m</u> m of jnch barrier	Cancel

# Scanning a document into the PC

You can scan a whole page

-OR-

scan a portion of the page after pre-scanning the document.

#### Scanning a whole page

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Adjust the following settings, if required, in the Scanner window:
  - Scan (Image Type)
  - Resolution
  - Scan Type
  - Brightness
  - Contrast
  - **Document Size**



After you select a document size, you can adjust the scanning area further by clicking the left mouse button and dragging it. This is required when you want to crop an image when scanning.

(See Settings in the Scanner window on page 15-6.)

**3** Click the **Start** button in the scanner window. When scanning is completed, click Cancel to return to the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> window.

#### PreScanning to crop a portion you want to scan

The **Pre-Scan** button is used to preview an image for cropping any unwanted areas from the image. When you are satisfied with the preview, click the **Start** button in the scanner window to scan the image.

1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.



- 2 Select the settings for Image Type, Resolution, Scan Type, Brightness, Contrast and Document Size, as needed.
- **3** In the **TWAIN\_32 Brother MFL Pro Scanner Setup** dialog box, click the **PreScan** button.

The entire original will be scanned into the PC and will appear in the Scanning Area.
**4** Select the portion you want to scan by clicking the left mouse button and dragging it.



Scanning area

- You can enlarge the portion you selected by pressing 🖳 to check it. If you want to select the different portion, use 🔍 to undo the image.
- 5 Click Start.

This time only the selected area of the original will appear in the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> window (or your software application window).

6 In the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> window, use the options available to refine the image.

#### Scan (Image Type)

Select the image type of output from **Photo**, **Web** or **Text**. **Resolution** and **Scan Type** will be altered for each default setting.

The default settings are:

Image Type		Resolution	Scan Type
Photo	Select for scanning photo images.	300 x 300 dpi	24-bit color
Web	Select for attaching the scanned image to web pages.	100 x 100 dpi	24-bit color
Text	Select for scanning text documents.	200 x 200 dpi	Black & White

#### Resolution

You can change the scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but can achieve a finer scanned image. The following table shows the resolution you can choose and the available colors.

Resolution	Black & White / Gray (Error Diffusion)	256 color	True Gray / 24 bit color
100 x 100 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
150 x 150 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
200 x 200 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
300 x 300 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
400 x 400 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
600 x 600 dpi	Yes	Yes	Yes
1200 x1200 dpi	Yes	No	Yes
2400 x 2400 dpi	Yes	No	Yes
4800 x 4800 dpi	Yes	No	Yes
9600 x 9600 dpi	Yes	No	Yes

#### Scan Type

Black & White:	Set the Scan Type to <i>Black &amp; White</i> for text or line art.
Gray Scale:	Set the Scan Type to <i>Gray</i> or <i>True Gray</i> for photographic images.
Colors:	Set either:
	256 Color, which scans up to 256 colors, or 24-bit color which scans up to 16.8 million colors.
	Although using 24-bit color creates an image with the most accurate colors, the image file will be approximately three times larger than a file created with 256 Color.

#### Brightness

Adjust this settings (-50 to 50) to obtain the best image. The default value is 0, representing an 'average'.

You can set the level by dragging the slide bar to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. You can also type a value in the box for the setting.

If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness value and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness value and scan the document again.

It is only a available when Black & White or Grey is selected.

#### Contrast

This setting is adjustable only when you have selected one of the gray scale settings. It is not available when *Black & White* and Color settings are selected as the *Scan Type*.

You can increase or decrease the contrast level by moving the slide bar to the left or right. An increase emphasizes dark and light areas of the Image, while a decrease reveals more detail in gray areas. You can also type a value in the box for the setting.

#### **Document Size**

Set the Size to one of the following:

- Letter (8 1/2 x 11 in.)
- A4 (210 x 297 mm)
- A5 (148 x 210 mm)
- B5 (182 x 257 mm)
- Executive (7 1/4 x 10 1/2 in.)
- Business Card (90 x 60 mm)
- Photo 3.5 x 5 in. (9 x 13cm)
- Photo 5 x 7 in. (13 x 18cm)
- APS C 4 x 6 in. (10 x 15cm)
- Custom (User adjustable from 0.35 x 0.35 in. to 8.5 x 11.69 in.)

To scan photographs or business cards, select the document size, and then place the document face down at the center of scanner glass.

When scanning photographs or other images for use in a word processor or other graphics application. You should try different settings for the contrast and resolution modes to see which best suits your needs. If you selected *Custom* as the size, The **Custom Document Size** dialog box will appear.

С	Custom Document Size	
	Custom Document Size <u>N</u> ame	
	<u>₩</u> idth [0.35 · 8.50] 8.5	
	Height [0.35 - 11.69]	
	Unit O <u>m</u> m Ojnch	
	<u>S</u> ave <u>D</u> elete	
[	<u>DK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

Type the Name, Width and Height for the document.

You can choose 'mm' or 'inch' as the unit for Width and Height.

You can see the actual paper size you selected on the screen.

Pīe	Scan
Width :	8.18 inches 2454 pixels
Height :	10.75 inches 3225 pixels
Data Sizi	e: 22.6 MB

- Width: shows the width of scanning area
- Height: shows the height of scanning area
- Data Size: shows the approximate data size calculated in a Bitmap format. The size will be different for other file formats such as JPEG.

## Scanning a document (For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP only)

### **WIA compliant**

Windows<sup>®</sup> XP uses Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) for scanning images from the MFC. You can scan images directly into the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> viewer that Brother included with your MFC or you can scan images directly into any other software application that supports WIA or TWAIN scanning.

#### How to access the scanner

- 1 Open your software application to scan a document.
- The instructions for scanning in this Guide are for when you use ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 8.0. The steps for scanning from another application may vary.
- 2 Select Scan from the File drop-down menu or select the Scan button.

The Scan panel appears in the left panel.

**3** Select the scanner you are using from the **Scanner** drop-down list box.

The Scan dialog box will appear:



#### Scanning a document

**1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.



- **2** Select the picture type (A).
- 3 If you require advanced settings, click Adjust the quality of the scanned picture (B). You can select Brightness, Contrast, Resolution and Picture Type from the Advanced Properties. Click the OK button after you choose your settings.

Advanced Properties		? 🗙
Advanced Properties Appearance	Brightness: Cogtrast	
Eesolution (DPI):	Picture type: Color picture Reset	>
	OK Car	ncel

- The scanner resolution you can select is up to 1200 x 1200 dpi. To select higher scan resolutions you can use the Brother Scanner Utility. (See *Brother Scanner Utility* on page 15-14.)
- **4** To start scanning your document, click the **Scan** button in the Scan dialog box.

#### PreScanning to crop a portion you want to scan

The **Preview** button is used to preview an image for cropping any unwanted portions from the image. When you are satisfied with the preview, click the **Scan** button from the scanner window to scan the image.

1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.

A —	Scan using Brother MFC-XXXX USB What do you want to scan? Select an option below for the type of picture you want to scan.		Scanning area
	Adjust the quality of the scanned picture	Preview Scan Cancel	

- **2** Select the picture type (A).
- **3** In the Scan dialog box, click the **Preview** button. The entire original will be scanned into the PC and will appear in the scanning area.
- **4** Select the portion you want to scan by clicking the left mouse on the boxes in the corner and dragging it over the area.



5 If you require advanced settings, click Picture Type from the Adjust the quality of the scanned picture (B). You can select Brightness, Contrast, Resolution and Picture Type from the Advanced Properties tab. Click the OK button after you choose your settings.

<b>≫</b> Scan usir	g Brother MFC-XXXX USB		2
Select an optivant to scan.	avou want to scan? on below for the type of picture you alor picture ack and while picture or text ustom Settings		
	Advanced Properties	Preview Scan Cance	el
	Appearance Bightne Cogtrast		
	Resolution (DPI): Picture :		

**6** To start scanning your document, click the **Scan** button in the Scan dialog box.

This time only the selected area of the original will appear in the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> window (or your software application window).

#### **Brother Scanner Utility**

The Brother Scanner Utility is used for configuring the scanner driver for resolutions higher than 1200dpi.

#### To run the utility:

You can run the utility by selecting the **Scanner Utility** located in the **Start/Programs/Brother/Brother MFL Pro Suite** menu.

Scanning at resolutions greater than 1200dpi may cause problems with some scanning applications.

# Using the scan key

You can use the **Scan to** key on the control panel to scan originals into your word processing, graphics or E-mail applications or your computer folder. The advantage of using the **Scan to** key is that you avoid the mouse clicks required to scan from your computer.



If you are using a Macintosh<sup>®</sup> computer the **Scan to** key will work only for Scan to Card.

#### For Scan to E-mail, Scan to Image, Scan to OCR and Scan to File only

Before you can use the **Scan to** key on the control panel, you must have connected the MFC to your Windows<sup>®</sup> based computer and loaded the appropriate Brother Drivers for your version of Windows<sup>®</sup>.

When you are ready to use the **Scan to** key, make sure the Brother Control Center application is running on your computer. For details about how to configure the Brother Control Center buttons to launch the application of your choice using the **Scan to** key, go to the appropriate chapter:

- For Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me and 2000 Professional, see Using the Brother Control Center for Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/ 98SE/Me/2000 Professional on page 16-1.
- For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP, see Using the Windows<sup>®</sup>-Based Brother SmartUI Control Center on page 17-1.

## Scan to E-mail

You can either scan a black and white or color original into your E-mail application as a file attachment. You can change the **Scan to** key configuration.(See *Scan to E-mail* on page 16-7 to 16-8.) (For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP: See *Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button Configuration* on page 17-5 to 17-13.)

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Press the **Scan to** key.
- **3** Press (\*) to select SCAN TO E-MAIL. Press Menu/Set.

The MFC will scan the original, create a file attachment, and launch your E-mail application, displaying the new message waiting to be addressed.

### Scan Image

You can scan a color picture into your graphics application for viewing and editing. You can change the **Scan to** key configuration. (See *Scan to E-mail* on page 16-7 to 16-8.)(For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP: See *Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button Configuration* on page 17-5 to 17-13.)

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Press the **Scan to** key.
- **3** Press (\*) to select SCAN IMAGE. Press **Menu/Set**.

The MFC will start the scanning process.

## Scan/OCR

If your original is text, you can have it converted by ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> to an editable text file and then have the result displayed in your word processing application for viewing and editing. You can change the **Scan to** key configuration. (See *Scan to E-mail* on page 16-7 to 16-8.)(For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP: See *Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button Configuration* on page 17-5 to 17-13.)

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Press the Scan to key.
- 3 Press (\*) to select SCAN/OCR. Press Menu/Set. The MFC will start the scanning process.

## Scan to File

You can scan a black and white or a color original into your computer and save it as a file in the folder you choose. The file type and specific folder are based on the settings you have chosen in the Scan to File screen of the Brother MFL-Pro Control Center. (See *Scan to File* on page 16-5.)(For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP: See *Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button Configuration* on page 17-5 to 17-13.)

- **1** Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Press the **Scan to** key.
- 3 Press (\*) to select SCAN TO FILE. Press Menu/Set. The MEC will start the searning press

The MFC will start the scanning process.

### Scan to Card

You can scan black and white and color originals into a media card. Black and white originals will be stored in TIFF file format (\*.TIF). Color originals may be stored in PDF (\*.PDF) or JPEG (\*.JPG) file format. The default setting is COLOR STD and the default file format is PDF. File names default to the current date. For example, the fifth image scanned on July 1, 2002 would be named 07010205.PDF. You can change the color, quality and file name as you want.

Quality	Selectable File Format	Default File Format
B&W STD (STANDARD)	TIFF	TIFF
B&W FINE	TIFF	TIFF
COLOR STD (STANDARD)	JPEG / PDF	PDF*
COLOR FINE	JPEG / PDF	PDF*
COLOR S.FINE	JPEG / PDF	PDF*

- You can choose the default file format in the **Menu**, **4**, **6** for color files. (See *Changing the default color file format* on page 15-19.)
- 1 Insert a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>, CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> card into your MFC.
- O Do not take out the media card while the LED on the MFC is blinking to keep from damaging it.
- 2 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 3 Press Scan to.
- 4 Press (\*) to select SCAN TO CARD. Press Menu/Set.

5 Press (\*) to select START SCANNING. Press Menu/Set. The MFC will start scanning.

-OR-

```
Press (*) to select CHANGE QUALITY to change the quality.
Press Menu/Set. Go to Step 6.
```

-OR-

Select CHANGE FILE NAME to change the file name. Press **Menu/Set**. Go to Step 7.

Press Menu/Set \_\_OR\_\_ Press Menu/Set. When the MFC has finished scanning the page, the LCD shows: Place the next page to be scanned, and then press Menu/Set.

Press Scan to to exit.

- Changing the default color file format
  - 1 Press Menu/Set, 4, 6.
  - **2** Press ( ) to select PDF or JPEG. Press Menu/Set.
  - 3 Press Stop/Exit.

\_\_OR\_\_

6 Press (\*) to select the quality you want. Press Menu/Set.

If you selected COLOR STD, COLOR FINE or COLOR S.FINE, press ( ) to select the file format (PDF or JPEG).

\_\_OR\_\_

To start scanning, press () to select START SCANNING. Press Menu/Set

To change the file name, go to Step 7.

7 If you selected CHANGE FILE NAME, press 1 to select 1.CHANGE.

Use the dial pad to enter the file name.

Press Menu/Set. (You can only change the first 6 digits.) Press () to select START SCANNING.

> NEXT:PRESS SET END: PRESS SCAN

PHOTOCAPTURE 6.SCAN TO CARD

# Using ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> and TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR

ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> for Brother is a document management application. You will use PaperPort<sup>®</sup> to view scanned documents.

PaperPort<sup>®</sup> has a sophisticated, yet easy-to-use, filing system that will help you organize your graphics and text documents. It allows you to combine or "stack" documents of different formats for printing, faxing or filing.

ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> can be accessed through the ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> program group.

See Documentation for Multi-Function Link® Pro on the CD-ROM.



The complete ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> Users Guide, including ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR, is in the Documentation on the CD-ROM.

This chapter is only an introduction to the basic operations.

When you install Multi-Function Link<sup>®</sup> Pro, ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> for Brother and ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR are installed with it automatically.

If you are using Windows<sup>®</sup> XP or Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional, we recommend that you are logged on as an administrator.

## Viewing items

ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> provides several ways to view items:

**Desktop View** displays a thumbnail (a small graphic that represents each item in a Desktop or folder).

Items in the selected folder appear on the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> Desktop. You can see PaperPort<sup>®</sup> items (MAX files) and non-PaperPort<sup>®</sup> items (files created using other applications).

Non-PaperPort<sup>®</sup> items include an icon that indicates the application that was used to create the item; a non-PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item is represented by a small rectangular thumbnail and not an actual image.



Desktop View displays items as thumbnails

**Page View** displays a close-up of a single page and you can open a PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item by double-clicking on it.

As long as you have the appropriate application on your computer to display it, you can also double-click a non-PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item to open it.



Page View displays each item as a full page

## Organizing your items in folders

PaperPort<sup>®</sup> has an easy-to-use filing system for organizing your items. The filing system consists of folders and items that you select to view in **Desktop** View. An item can be a PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item or a non-PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item:

- Folders are arranged in a "tree" structure in the Folder View. You use this section to select folders and view their items in Desktop View.
- You can simply drag and drop an item onto a folder. When the folder is highlighted, release the mouse button and the item is stored in that folder.
- Folders can be "nested"—that is, stored in other folders.
- When you double-click a folder, its items (both PaperPort<sup>®</sup> MAX files and non PaperPort<sup>®</sup> files) appear on the Desktop.
- You can also use Windows<sup>®</sup> Explorer to manage the folders and items shown in Desktop View.

#### **Quick links to other applications**

ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> automatically recognizes many other applications on your computer and creates a "working link" to them.

The Send To Bar at the bottom of the Desktop view shows icons of those linked applications.

To use a link, drag an item onto one of the icons to start the application represented by the icon. A typical use of the Send To Bar is to select an item and then fax it.

This sample Send To Bar shows several applications with links to PaperPort<sup>®</sup>.



If PaperPort<sup>®</sup> does not automatically recognize one of the applications on your computer, you can manually create a link using the **Add to Send To Bar...** command.

(See PaperPort<sup>®</sup> in the Documentation on the CD-ROM for more information about creating new links.)

# ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR lets you convert image text in to text you can edit

Software by:



ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> OCR is installed automatically with PaperPort<sup>®</sup> when you install Multi-Function Link<sup>®</sup> Pro on your computer.

ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> can quickly convert the text on a ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> PaperPort<sup>®</sup> item (which is really just a picture of the text) into text that you can edit with a word processing application.

PaperPort<sup>®</sup> uses the optical character recognition application ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup>, which comes with PaperPort<sup>®</sup>.

-OR-

PaperPort<sup>®</sup> uses your application if it is already on your computer. You can convert the entire item, or by using the **Copy Text** command, you can select only a portion of the text to convert.

Dragging an item onto a word-processing link icon starts PaperPort<sup>®</sup>'s built-in OCR application, or you can use your own OCR application.



## You can Import items from other applications

In addition to scanning items, you can bring items into PaperPort<sup>®</sup> in a variety of ways and convert them to PaperPort<sup>®</sup> (MAX) files in several different ways:

- Print to the Desktop View from another application, such as Microsoft Excel.
- Import files saved in other file formats, such as Windows<sup>®</sup> Bitmap (BMP) or Tag Image File Format (TIFF).

## You can Export items in other formats

You can export or save PaperPort<sup>®</sup> items in several popular file formats, such as BMP, JPEG, TIFF, or self-viewing.

For example, to create a file for an Internet Web site, export it as a JPEG file. Web pages often use JPEG files for displaying images.

#### Exporting an image file

- 1 Select the Save As command from the File pull-down menu in the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> window. The Save 'XXXXX' As dialog box will be displayed.
- **2** Select the drive and directory where you want to store the file.
- **3** Enter the new file name and choose the file type or select a name from the File Name text box. (You can scroll through the Directories and File Name listing for prompting.)
- 4 Select the OK button to save your file, or Cancel to return to the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> without saving it.

# To Uninstall PaperPort<sup>®</sup> and ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge

For Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/98SE, and Windows<sup>®</sup> Me:

Select Start, Settings, Control Panel, Add/Remove Programs and the Install/Uninstall tab.

Select **Brother Extensions for Paperport** and click the **Add/Remove** button.

Select **PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 8.0 SE** from the list and click the **Add/Remove** button.

For Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional:

Select Start, Settings, Control Panel and Add/Remove Programs. Select Brother Extensions for Paperport and click the Change/Remove button.

Select PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 8.0 SE from the list and click the Change button.

For Windows<sup>®</sup> XP:

Select Start, Control Panel, Add or Remove Programs and the Change or Remove Programs icon.

Select PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 8.0 SE from the list and click the Change button.

# **16** Using the Brother Control Center for Windows<sup>®</sup> 98/ 98SE/Me/2000 Professional



# **Brother MFL-Pro Control Center**

The Brother Control Center is a software utility that pops up on the PC screen whenever you right-click the Control Center icon in the Task Tray and select **Show**. This lets you configure the **Scan to** key on your MFC. For example, you can change the default scanning settings, such as resolution, color mode and application.

For information about the Scan to key, See Using the scan key on page 15-15.



#### AutoLoad the Brother Control Center

The Control Center is loaded every time Windows<sup>®</sup> is started.

When the Control Center is loaded, the Control Center 🍇 icon will appear on the task bar.

If you don't want the Control Center to load automatically, you can turn off AutoLoad.

🔊 If the Control Center 🏅 icon does not appear on your task bar, vou will have to launch it.

Double-click the SmartUI A icon on the desktop or from the Start menu, select Programs, ScanSoft PaperPort 8.0, and then click Brother SmartUI POPUP.

## How to turn off AutoLoad

- Left-click the Control Center 🖏 icon and click **Show**. 1
- 2 When the Control Center window appears, left-click the Smart Click Stress Control Center button.

A dialogue box will appear:

Pop-Up Setting
🔽 AutoLoad Pop-Up
Global Scanner Settings
Text for OCR
Resolution: 200x200
Color Mode: Black & White
Scan Size: Letter 8.5 x 11 in
Brightness:
Contrast:
Save Settings Restore Defaults
Ok

3 Uncheck the 'AutoLoad' Pop-Up check box.

# **Brother Control Center features**

## **Auto Configuration**

During installation the Control Center will check your system to set up the default applications for E-mail, word processing and the graphics viewer/editor.

For example, if you are using Outlook as your default E-mail application, the Control Center will create a link and a scanning application button for Outlook.

You can change the default application. Right-click the appropriate Control Center button to display *Configuration* and then click on it. Select a different application.

For example, you can change a scan button from MS Word Pad to MS Word we by changing the application that is listed for the Word Processor.

Microsoft WordPad			
Scanner Setting			
Text for OCR			•
Modify Settings			
Word Processor			
Word Processor:	Microsoft WordPad		•
	Link Settings		
		,	
		L OK	]

#### Scan to key operations

*Scan to File*—Lets you to scan directly to a file on your computer. You can change the file type and directory for the document you are scanning.

*Scan to E-mail*—Lets you scan a picture or text document directly into an E-mail application as a standard attachment. You can choose the file type and resolution for the attachment.

*Scan/OCR (Word Processor)*—Lets you to scan a text document, run ScanSoft TextBridge OCR, and insert the text original (not a graphic image) into a word processing file. You can choose the word processing application, such as Word Pad, MS Word, Word Perfect, and so on.

*Scan Image*—Lets you to scan an image directly into any graphic viewer/editor application. You can choose the graphics application, such as Microsoft Paint or Corel PhotoPaint.

# Scan to File

Scan To File
Scanner Setting
Photos (High Quality)
Modify Settings
Destination Folder
<ul> <li>PaperPort Folder</li> <li>Other Folder</li> </ul>
File: PaperPort Image Item (*.max)
Folder: D:\My Documents\My PaperPort Documents
Browse
Ok

### To access Scan to File Configuration screen

- In the Task Tray right-click the Control Center K icon and select Show to access the Brother Control Center window.
- 2 Right-click **Scan to File** button and then click on *Configuration*. Click the **Modify Settings** button to view the configuration screen of the **Control Center**.
- **3** To save your settings, click **OK**

-OR-

To go back to the factory default settings, click the **Restore Defaults** button.

#### Scanner Settings

From the pull-down list, select the scanning mode that is appropriate for the type of file: *Text for OCR*; *Photos*; *Photos (High Quality)*; *Photos (Quick Scan)* or *Custom*.

To change any of the settings for the mode, click Modify Settings.

#### **Destination folder**

**PaperPort Folder**—Select this check box to scan the original into your PaperPort folder.

**Other Folder**—Select this check box, to scan the original as another file type or to store it in another directory/folder.

**File**—If you selected Other folder from the pull-down list, select the type of file:

PaperPort Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort Self-Viewing (\*.exe) PaperPort Browser-Viewable (\*.htm) PaperPort 5.0 Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort 4.0 Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort 3.0 Image Item (\*.max) Windows Bitmap (\*bmp) PC Paintbrush (\*.pcx) PCX Multi-page (\*.dcx) JPEG (\*.jpg) TIFF-Uncompressed (\*.tif) TIFF-Group 4 (\*.tif) TIFF-Class F (\*.tif) TIFF Multi-page - Uncompressed (\*.tif) TIFF Multi-page - Group 4 (\*.tif) TIFF Multi-page - Class F (\*.tif) Portable Network Graphics (\*.png) FlashPix (\*.fpx)

To Search your system for the directory and folder you want, click the **Browse** button. Click **OK** to save your settings.

# Scan to E-mail

Outlook Express	
Scanner Setting	
Photos (Quick Scan)	
Modify Settings	
EMail Application	
EMail Application:	Outlook Express
	EMail Settings
	Ok

### To access Scan to E-mail Configuration screen

- In the Task Tray right-click the Control Center k icon and select Show to access the Brother Control Center window.
- 2 Right-click the E-mail application button and click on *Configuration*. Click the **Modify Settings** button to view the configuration screen of the **Control Center**.
- **3** To save your settings, click the **OK** button **\_\_\_OR\_\_\_**

To go back to the factory default settings, click the **Restore Defaults** button.

#### Scanner Settings

From the pull-down list, select the scanning mode that is appropriate for the type of file: *Text for OCR*; *Photos*; *Photos (High Quality)*; *Photos (Quick Scan)* or *Custom*.

To change any of the settings for this mode, click **Modify Settings**.

## E-mail application

**E-mail Application**—From the pull-down list, select your E-mail application.

E-mail Settings—Click the E-Mail Settings button to set up links.

The Send To Options window will appear:



## Send to Options

**Convert attachments to specified file type**—Converts items to the type in the **File Type** box. Clear this check box to keep files in their source format; for example, to keep Word documents in the .doc format and JPEG images in the .jpg format.

**All documents and image items**—Converts all items regardless of the program in which the item was created; for example, converts all Word (doc) files and JPEG (.jpg) flies to the file type.

**PaperPort image items (max) only**—Converts only PaperPort image items (.max) files. PaperPort does not convert other file types, such as JPEG images and Word documents.

**File type**—Identifies the format in which to convert items; for example, JPEG or TIFF.

**Combine items into a single file, if possible**—Combines all selected items into a single file that contains multiple pages. This option is available only when the file type supports multiple pages, such as multi-page TIFF.

# Scan to OCR (Word Processor)

Microsoft WordPad		
Scanner Setting		
Text for OCR		•
Modify Settings		
Word Processor		
Word Processor:	Microsoft WordPad	•
	Link Settings	
-		
		OK

## To access Scan to OCR Configuration screen

- In the Task Tray right-click the Control Center K icon and select Show to access the Brother Control Center window.
- 2 Right-click the word processor application button and click on *Configuration*. Click the **Modify Settings** button to view the configuration screen of the **Control Center**.
- **3** To save your settings, click the **OK** button **\_\_\_OR\_\_\_**

To go back to the factory default settings, click the **Restore Defaults** button.

#### Scanner Settings

From the pull-down list, select the scanning mode that is appropriate for the type of file: *Text for OCR*; *Photos*; *Photos (High Quality)*; *Photos (Quick Scan)* or *Custom*.

To change any of the settings for this mode, click **Modify Settings**.

#### Word Processor

**Word Processor**—From the pull-down list, select the word processor you want to use.

Click the **Link Settings** button to display the screen to set up the document format you want to use and identify the OCR program:

Send To Options	s - Microsoft WordPad	×	
Program Links			
	Send Image Item As <u>Fi</u> le type: Windows Write,wri		
	Convert Image to Text with <u> <u> </u> <u> </u></u>		
Include icon on Send To bar			
	OK Cancel Help		

**File Type**—From the pull-down list, select the file type you want to use for your word processor or text documents.

**OCR**—Identify the OCR program to use to convert scanned document images to editable documents. This option is available only when you have an OCR program other than the one provided with PaperPort. (PaperPort 8.0 uses the same OCR engine that is in ScanSoft's TextBridge Pro Millennium product.)

Click the **Settings** button to choose how the OCR application will read the pages that you scan into your word processor application.

The OCR Settings window will appear:



Select your setting and click OK.

- Auto orient page—Click this check box to automatically rotate pages so that the text is upright.
- Single column output—Click this check box if you want to remove columns from multi-column documents so that converted text appears in a one-column format.

# Scan Image

Microsoft Paint	
Scanner Setting	
Photos (High Quality)	
Modify Settings	
Target Application	
Application:	Microsoft Paint
	Custom Link Settings
	ОК

## To access Scan to Image Configuration screen

- In the Task Tray right-click the Control Center K icon and select Show to access the Brother Control Center window.
- **2** Right-click the graphic application button and click on *Configuration*. Click the **Modify Settings** button to view the configuration screen of the **Control Center**.
- **3** To save your settings, click the **OK** button

#### \_\_OR\_\_

To go back to the factory default settings, click the **Restore Defaults** button.

## Scanner Settings

From the pull-down list, select the scanning mode that is appropriate for the type of file: *Text for OCR*; *Photos*; *Photos (High Quality)*; *Photos (Quick Scan)* or *Custom*.

To change any of the settings for this mode, click Modify Settings.

#### **Target Application**

**Application**—From the pull-down list, select the application you want to add to this Pop-Up screen.

Click the **Custom Link Settings** button to set up links for your user-defined application.

# **17 Using the Windows®-Based Brother SmartUI Control Center** (For Windows® XP)

Brother SmartUI Control Center

The Brother Control Center is a software utility that allows you to quite easily, with very few mouse clicks, access the most frequently used scanning applications. Using the Control Center eliminates the need to manually launch the specific applications and allows you to scan a document directly to a folder on your computer. The Brother Control Center provides four categories of operations:

- **1** Scan directly to a file, E-mail, word processor or graphics application of your choice.
- **2** Enhanced copy functions.
- **3** PC Faxing using the Brother PC-Fax software.
- **4** Custom buttons allow you to configure a button to meet you own application requirements.



In the Task Tray right-click on the Control Center 🖏 icon and select **Show** to have access to the Brother SmartUI Control Center window.

For information about the **Scan to** key, see *Using the scan key* on page 15-15.

### AutoLoad the Brother Control Center

The Control Center is initially configured to automatically load each time Windows<sup>®</sup> is started. When the Control Center is loaded the Control Center is icon will appear in the task bar. If you don't want the Control Center to load automatically, you can turn AutoLoad off.

#### How to turn off Auto Load

- 1 right-click the Control Center K icon in the Task Tray and select Show.
- 2 The main SmartUI Control Center window appears. Please look at the bottom of the window for a check box labeled "AutoLoad Pop-up".



**3** Uncheck the AutoLoad Pop-Up option to prevent the SmartUI from automatically loading every time Windows is started.

# **Brother Control Center features**

The SmartUI control center gives you the ability to configure the hardware **Scan to** key on your MFC such as "Scan to File". The "Scan to File" feature allows you to scan a document directly to your hard disk and choose the file format and destination folder without having to run any other applications. Select which section you want by clicking on the appropriate tab.

S	imartUl	
	Hardware Section	Software Section
	Scan	

## **Auto Configuration**

During the installation process the Control Center checks your system to determine the default applications for E-mail, word processing and graphics viewer/editor.

**For example**, if you are using Outlook as your default E-mail application, the Control Center automatically will create a link and a scanning application button for Outlook.

You can change the default application by right-clicking on any of the scan buttons in the Control Center and then clicking *Configuration*. Select the Configuration tab and from the Application pull down menu select a different application. For example, you can change the E-mail scan button from Outlook Express to Outlook by changing the application that is listed.

Scan to OCR
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings
Application: Microsoft VordPad
Famat PaperPort mage Item (".max)
Folder: PaperPort Other Folder
F:\Oocuments and Settings\CS Group\My Documents\My P
Browse
OK Cancel

# Hardware Section: Changing the Scan to Button Configuration

When the SmartUI Control Center is displayed, you can access the Hardware Section window to reconfigure the **Scan to** key on your MFC. Click the Hardware Section tab at the top left of the SmartUI Control Center screen. (See *Using the scan key* on page 15-15.)

SmartUI	
Hardware Section Software Section	
Hardware Buttons	<u>E</u> xit
Scan To E-mail	<u>U</u> ser Guide
	<u>R</u> estore
Scan To File	
Scan To Image	
Scan To OCR	
At your side.	
brother	
Brother MFC-XXXX	
## Scan To E-mail

To configure the Scan to E-mail feature left-click on the **Scan to E-mail** button and the following screen will appear. You have the ability to change the configuration that includes the destination E-mail application, attachment file and the scanner settings.

Scan to Email	×
Scan Action Conliguration Scan Settings	
Application: Cutlook Express	
Format FaperPor: Image Item (*, max)	
Folder: PapePor: Other Folder F\Documents and Settings\CS_Group\Wy_Documents\My_P	
Browse	
OK Ca	ncel

To change the destination E-mail application you use the Application pull down list to select the compatible E-mail application, which is installed on your system.

If you wish to change the attachment file type click on the **Link Preferences** button to display a list of file types.

## Scan To File

SmartUI	X
Hardware Section Software Section	
Hardware Buttons	<u>E</u> xit
Scan To E-mail	User Guide
	<u>R</u> estore
Scan To File	
Scan To Image	
Scan To OCR	
brother	
Brother MFC-XXXX	

To configure the Scan to File feature, left click on the **Scan to File** button and the following screen will appear.

Scan to File	
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft WordPad	
Eormat: PaperPort Image Item (*.max)	
- Folder:	
<u>PaperPort</u>	
© Other Folder	
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator\My Documents\M	
Browse	
OK	Cancel

Select the file type for the saved image by selecting from the Format pull douwn list. You can save the file to the default PaperPort folder so the file appears in PaperPort or you can select another folder/directory by clicking the Browse button.

## Scan To Image

SmartUI	X
Hardware Section Software Section	
Hardware Buttons	Exit
Scan To E-mail	User Guide
	<u>R</u> estore
Scan To File	
Scan To Image	
Scall to image	
Scan To OCR	
At your side.	
brother	
Brother MFC-XXXX	
Drutridt wir S-AAAA	

To configure the Scan to Image feature left-click on the **Scan to Image** button and the following screen will appear. You have the ability to change the configuration, which includes the destination image format or document application.

Scan to Image	nfiguration Scan Settings		
Application:	Microsoft Paint Microsoft Paint Microsoft WordPad Notepad Outlook Express PaperPort Image Item ("max)	•	
Folder: PaperPol Other Fo	rt		
F:\Documents	and Settings\CS Group\My Documents\My Browse	Ρ	
	OK		Cancel

To change the default setting of the scan, click on the **Scan Settings** tab.

Scan to Imag	e 🔀
Scan Action 0	Configuration Scan Settings
<u>C</u> olor Mode:	24-bit Color
<u>R</u> esolution:	200
<u>P</u> aper Size:	Letter-8.5 x 11 in
<u>B</u> rightness	J Darken Lighten
C <u>o</u> ntrast	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Restore Def	iaults
	OK Cancel

You can set the Color Mode to Black & White, 8-bit Gray or 24-bit Color.

The resolution can be changed from 100 to 1200 dpi. You can define the size of the paper you're using, and you can adjust the brightness and contrast of the image before scanning.

## Scan To OCR

Hardwa	re Buttons	Exit User Guide
_	Scan To E-mail	
	Scan To File	<u>Restore</u>
_	Scall TOTHE	
	Scan To Image	
_		
	Scan To OCR	
		brother

To configure the Scan to OCR feature left-click on the **Scan to OCR** button and the following screen will appear. You have the ability to change the configuration, which includes the destination applications.

Scan to OCR	×
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft WordPad	
Link Preferences	
Famat: PaperPort mage Item (".max)	
Foller	
PaperPort	
C Other Folder	
F:\Documents and Settings\CS Group\My Documents\My P	
Browse	
OK Cer	ncel

If you wish to send your scan as a different file type, click on **Link Preferences** button. You can select the File Type according to your needs.

Send To Option	ıs - Microsoft WordPad	×
Program Links		
	Send Image Item As File type: Windows Write,win ISO Text bat ASCII Stat.bat ASCII Stat.bat Excel 50,0xls OCR: Excel 00 Stat.bat HTML,htm Settings	
	☑ Include icon on Send To bar	
	OK Cancel Help	

You have the option to choose your OCR setting from **Single column output** to **Auto orient page**.



## **Software Section**

The Software Section contains four groups of scan to buttons. Each section has a number of different buttons which are predefined for the most frequently used applications. The **Scan** section contains four buttons for Scan to File, Scan to E-mail, Scan to Word Processor and Scan to Image applications. The **Copy** section contains one button for one to one copying. The **Fax** section button is for sending faxes using the Brother PC-FAX application and the **Custom** section contains three buttons with which you can assign your own function.



## Scan

\*1 *Scan to File* —enables you to scan directly to a disk file. You can change the file type and destination directory, as needed.

\*2 Scan to E-mail (Default: Outlook Express) —enables you to scan a page or document directly into an E-mail application as a standard attachment. You have the option of selecting the file type and resolution for the attachment.

\*3 Scan to Word Processor (Default: MS WordPad) —enables you to scan a page or document, automatically run ScanSoft TextBridge OCR and insert the text (not graphic image) into a word processing program. You have the option of selecting the destination word processing program, such as WordPad, MS Word, Word Perfect or whichever word processing program is installed on your computer.

\*4 Scan to Graphic Application (Default: MS Paint) —enables you to scan a page directly into any graphic viewer/editor application. You can select the destination application, such as MS Paint, Corel PhotoPaint, Adobe PhotoShop, or any kind of image editor application you already have installed on your computer.

## Сору

*Copy* (Copy one to one)—allows you to use the PC and any Windows<sup>®</sup> printer driver for enhanced copy operations. You can scan the page on the MFC and print the copies using any of the features of the MFC printer driver—**OR**—you can direct the copy output to any standard Windows<sup>®</sup> printer driver installed on the PC including network printers.

## Fax

Send a Fax (Brother PC-FAX)—enables you to scan a page or document and automatically send the image as a fax from the PC using the Brother PC-FAX software.

## Custom

*Scan to File*—These buttons have been pre-programmed for the Scan to File feature. You can change the configuration of each of these buttons to meet your specific requirements by right-clicking on a button and following the configuration menus.

## Scan to File

The Scan to File button allows you to scan an image and save it in a specific file type to any directory on you hard disk. This allows you to easily archive your paper documents. To configure the file type and save to directory right-click on the Scan to File button and click Configuration.

The Scan Action tab is set to File and should not be changed.



To change the configuration click on the Configuration tab.

Scan to File	X
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft WordPad  Unk.Preferences	
Eormat PaperPort Image Item (*.max)	
Folder © BeperPort © Other Folder	
H\Documents and Settings\Administrator/DEVD023.001\My Doc Browse	
OK	Cancel

Select the file type for the saved image by selecting from the Format pull down list. You can save the file to the default PaperPort folder so the file appears in PaperPort or you can select another folder/directory by click the Browse button.

You can default setting by selecting the Other Folder button and then clicking Browse and selecting the folder in which you wish to save your files.

# Scan to E-mail

The Scan To E-mail is automatically configured to your default E-mail application. To change the default E-mail application or attachment file type right-click on the E-mail button and select "Configuration".

The Scan Action tab is set to E-mail and should not be changed.

Scan to Email	X
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Scan Type	
C Application	
C File	
C OCR	
OK Can	el :

To change the E-mail application click on the Configuration tab. From Application pull down list select your preferred E-mail application.

can to Email
Scan Action Conliguration Scan Settings
Application: Cutlook Express
Format FaperPor: Image Item (",max)
C OtherFolder
F:\Documents and Settings\CS_Sroup\My_Documents\My_P Browse
OK Cancel

To change the file type of the attachment click the **Link Preferences** button to set up links. Check the **Convert attachments to specified file type** box and then select the appropriate file type from the pull down list.



## File attachments

Items are mailed as file attachments using the file type you have selected.

*Convert attachments to specified file type*—Click this check box if you want to change the file type of attachments.

All documents and image items—Click this check box if you want to convert all scanned images to the same file type.

PaperPort image items (MAX) only—Click this check box if you want to convert only attachments that are PaperPort MAX files.

Combine items into single file, if possible—Click this check box if you want to combine all the attachments into one file. With this box unchecked each scanned page will be saved in its own individual file.

*File Type*—Select from the pull-down list the type of file you want the scanned images to be saved in.

PaperPort Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort Browser-Viewable (\*.htm) PaperPort Self Viewing (\*.exe) PaperPort 5.0 Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort 4.0 Image Item (\*.max) PaperPort 3.0 Image Item (\*.max) Windows Bitmap (\*.bmp) PC Paintbrush (\*.bmp) PC Paintbrush (\*.pcx) PCX Multi-page (\*.dcx) JPEG (\*.jpg) TIFF-Uncompressed (\*.tif) TIFF Group 4 (\*.tif) Multi-Page - Group 4 (\*.tif)

## **Scanner settings**

You have the ability to change the scanner settings used to create the file attachments. Click on the Scan Settings tab and select the appropriate settings.

Scan to Ema	il 🛛 🛛		
Scan Action	Configuration Scan Settings		
Color Mode:	8-bit Gray		
Resolution:	100		
Paper Size:	Letter - 8.5 x 11 in		
Brightness			
Contrast	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Restore Del	Restore Defaults		
	OK Cancel		

# Scan to OCR (Word Processing program)

Scan to OCR converts the graphic page image data to text which can be edited by any word processor program. You can change the default word processor program (example: Word instead of Word Pad) and file type. You can also choose other OCR software package besides the TextBridge OCR which is built in PaperPort.

To configure Scan to OCR right-click on the WordPad button and select Configuration. The Scan Action tab is set to OCR and should not be changed.

Scan to OCR	×
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Scan Type	
C Application	
C File	
○ OCR	
C Emai	
OK Cance	

To change the word processing application click on the Configuration Tab. You can select the destination word processing application from the Application pull down list.

Scan to OCR
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings
Application: Microsoft VordPad
Format: PaperPort mage Item (*.max)
€ PaperPort € Other Folder
F:\Documents and Settings\CS Group\My Documents\My P Browse
OK Cancel

To change the program link preferences click the Link Preferences button.

Send To Option	ns - Microsoft WordPad	×
Program Links		
	Send Image Item As File type: Windows Write,wri	
	Convert Image to Text with OCR: PaperPort OCR	
	Settings	
W		
✓ Include icon on Send To bar		
	OK Cancel Help	

*File Type*—From the pull-down list, select the file format you want to use for documents.

OCR—Select the OCR application from the OCR pull down list.

# Scan to Graphics application (example: Microsoft Paint)

The Scan to Graphics Application allows you to scan an image so you can edit the image. To change the default graphics application right-click on the button and select Configuration.

The Scan Action tab is set to Application and should not be changed.



To change the configuration of the destination application click on the Configuration Tab.

an to Application	
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft Paint	
Link Preferences	
Eormat PaperPort Image Item (* max)	
Folder	
C Diher Folder	
H\Documents and Settings\Administrator.IDEVD023.001\Wy Doc	
Browse	
OK Car	icel

To change the destination application select the appropriate application from the Application pull down list.

To change the other configuration options click the Link Preferences button.



This option enables you to reduce image to screen resolution (96dpi), show warning if item has annotations, update original item if sent item is modified, if needed.

- Reduce image to screen resolution (96dpi)—Sets the resolution of your images to 96 dots per inch (dpi). This produces a smaller file with a resolution that is adequate for screen display.
- Show warning if item has annotations—Displays a message to alert you that annotations will become a permanent part of an image that contains annotation.
- Update original item if item sent is modified—If you save changes to the image in the image editing program, the modified image replaces the original image on the Paper Port desktop.

## Сору

The copy button can be customized to allow you to take advantage of the features built into the Brother printer drivers to do advanced copy functions.

The Copy button is automatically linked to the default Windows printer driver. You can set any printer as the default printer including non-Brother printers. Before you can use the Copy button you must first configure the printer driver by right-clicking on a Copy button and selecting Configuration.

Copy one to	one 🔀
Scan Settings	s
Color Mode:	B bit Gray
Resolution:	100 💌
Paper Size:	Letter - 8.5 x 11 in
Brightness	
Contrast	<del> /</del>
	0 100
Restore Def	aults Copy options
	OK Cancel

In the Scan Settings window you can select the color mode, resolution, paper size, brightness and contrast settings to be used. (NOTE: Selecting 24-bit Color will give you color output only when the destination printer is a color printer.)

To finish the Copy button configuration you must set the printer driver. Click the Copy options button to display the printer driver settings.

Brother MFC-4820C USB Printer	Properties	? 🛛
Basic Advanced Support		
ADG	<u>M</u> edia Type	Plain Paper
	Quality	C S.Fine C Fine C Normal C Fast
	Paper Size	Letter
Letter 8 ½ x 11 in	Page Layout	Normal
	Border Line	
Æn.	<u>O</u> rientation	<ul> <li>Portrait</li> <li>Landscape</li> </ul>
	Copies	1 Collate
	□ <u>N</u> ear Edge Print	Reverse Order
MFC will stop Color/Grayscale print operatio the ink cartridges are empty.	ns when one or more o	f Default About
		OK Cancel Help

# Fax setting (PC-Fax using the Brother Fax Driver)

The MFC includes a PC-Fax driver, which allows any Windows Application to send a Fax as simply as printing a document. The Brother SmartUI automatically configures the Fax button to use the Brother PC-FAX driver no user configuration is required.

The Scan Action tab is set to Application and should not be changed.



To change the PC-FAX settings click the Link Preferences button.

Send To Option:	s - Brother PC-FAX	
Program Links		
<b>(</b>	Automatic page orientation	
	Eax printer driver:	
	Brother PC-FAX on Ne02:	
<u>w</u>	_	Setup
FTP V		
	☑ Include icon on Send To bar	
	OK Cancel	Help

## **FAX settings**

#### **Brother PC-FAX**



To change the driver settings, click on the Setup button and then the Options button.

Print Setup		×
Orientation	Paper Size: Letter Source: Auto Select	OK Cancel

Select the *Paper Size*, *Paper Source*. If you need more customized setup, click on the Options button.



Select the *Paper Size*, Orientation (Portrait or Landscape) and Resolution (200x200 dpi or 200x100 dpi), and click **OK**.

To return to the factory default settings, click the **Defaults** button.

# **Custom: User-defined buttons**

There are up to three Custom buttons on the Brother SmartUI Control Center. You can set your own preferences and configuration to fit your required application.

To configure a Custom Button right click on the button and then click Configuration. The configuration window will appear. You have four function choices Application, File, OCR and Email.

**Application:** This setting will link the Control Panel button to any button which appears on the PaperPort Send to Bar. Please see the PaperPort help file for more information regarding PaperPort compatible applications.

**File:** This setting allows you to save a scanned image to any directory on local or network hard disk. You can also select the file format to be used.

**OCR:** Scanned documents will be converted to editable text files. If you have a third party OCR software package installed on your PC you can select it. The default OCR software is TextBridge which is built into PaperPort 8.0. You can also select the destination word processor and file format for the editable text.

**E-mail:** Scanned images will be attached to an email message. You can choose which E-mail package to use if you have more than one installed on your system. You can also select the file type for the attachment and create a quick send list of E-mail addresses chosen from your default E-mail address book.

## Customizing a user-defined button

To configure a Custom button right-click on the button and then click Configuration. Please follow the following guide lines for Custom Button configuration.

#### 1. Select the Scan Action

Select the type of scan by clicking the appropriate button.

Custom button1
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings
Scan Type
C Application
• Ele
C <u>o</u> cr
C E-mail
OK Cancel

#### 2. Select Configuration for the Scan Type.

To configure the scan operation click on the Configuration Tab. Depending upon which Scan Type button you selected you will see a different Configuration Tab list of settings.

#### **Application:**

Select the destination application program from the pull down list.

Custom button1	×
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft WordPad	
Link Preferences	
Eormat: PaperPort Image Item (".max)	
Folder:	
C PaperPort	
O Other Folder	
C:\Documents and Settings\Owner\My Documents\My Pape	
Browse	
OK Cano	el

Click on Link Preferences to set the Send to options. You can select the application from the scroll menu on the left.



#### File:

Select the file format from the Format pull down list. You can either send the file to the default PaperPort directory or select your own destination directory by selecting Other Folder. Use the Browse button to select the destination directory.

Custom button1	X
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Microsoft WordPad	
Eormat: PaperPort Image Item (*.max)	
EaperPort     Qther Folder	
H\Documents and Settings\Administrator.DEVD023.001\My Doc	
OK Cance	

#### OCR:

Select the destination word processing application program from the pull down list.

Application	Microsoft WordPad
	Link Preferences
<u>F</u> ormat:	PaperPort Image Item (*.max)
Fol <u>d</u> er:	
@ Eaper	Port
O Qther I	
H:\Documen	its and Settings\Administrator.IDEVD023.001\My Doc
	Browse

Click on Link Preferences and select the destination Application from the scroll menu on the left. Select the File Type from the File Type pull down list. You can also choose another OCR application from the OCR pull down list if another is installed on you system. Scansoft TextBridge is installed as port of the PaperPort 8.0 application.

Send To Options	- Microsoft WordPad	×
Program Links		
	Send Image Item As File type: Windows Write,wri	
	Convert Image to Text with OCR: PaperPort OCR	
	Settings	
¥		
	Include icon on Send To bar	
	OK Cancel Help	

#### E-mail:

Select the destination E-mail application program from the pull down list.

ustom button1	2
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings	
Application: Outlook Express	
Eormat: PaperPort Image Item (".max)	
Folder:	
C Deher Folder	
C:\Documents and Settings\Dwner\My Documents\My Pape	
Browse	
OK Cancel	

Click on the **Link Preferences** button to configure the Send To E-mail options. You can select the File type and Quick Send E-mail address list.



#### 3. Select Scan Settings.

You can select the scanner settings from each of the Scan Type options for the Custom buttons. You have the option to select Color Mode, Resolution, Paper Size and Brightness and Contrast settings.

Custom button1
Scan Action Configuration Scan Settings
Color Mode: Black & White
Resolution: 100
Paper Size: A4 - 210 x 297 mm
<u>B</u> rightness Darken Lighten
Contrast
Restore Defaults
OK Cancel



# **MFC Remote Setup**

The MFC Remote Setup application lets you to set up your MFC by using the ease and speed of programming on your PC. When you access this application, the settings on your MFC will be downloaded to your PC and displayed on your computer screen. If you change the settings, you can upload them directly to the MFC.

🛃 Brother MFC Remote Setu	up Program	X
B MPC-4820     Formation Sectors     Formation     Formation     Formation     Formation     Formation     Formation     SectorPerceve     Maintenance	GENERAL SETUP PAPER TYPE PLAIN PAPER SIZE LETTER DATE/TIME from PC Clock STATION ID FAX NAME: VOLUME RUNG MED BEEPER LOW SPEAKER MED HANDSET LOW VOLUME AMPLIFY ON   OFF LOD CONTRAST TONE/PULSE TON	]
Export Import	Print OK Cancel App	b

#### **OK** button

When you click **OK**, the process of uploading the data to the MFC begins. The MFC Remote Setup program is closed if an error message is displayed, enter the correct data again and then click **OK**.

#### **Cancel button**

The **Cancel** button clears your changes and exits the MFC Remote Setup application without uploading any data to the MFC.

#### Apply button

The **Apply** button uploads the data to the MFC, but stays in the Remote Setup application so you can make more changes.

#### **Print button**

The Print button prints the selected items on the MFC. You cannot print the MFC Remote Setup changes until you click the Apply button to upload the new data to the MFC. Then you can click the Print button to get an up-to-date printout.

#### Export button

Click the **Export** button to save your current settings to a file.

#### Import button

Click the **Import** button to read the settings from your saved file into the MFC Remote Setup screen.



You can use the **Export** and **Import** buttons to save and use several sets of settings for your MFC.



# **PC-FAX** sending

The Brother PC-FAX feature lets you send a file from your PC.

You can create a file in any application on your PC, and then send it as a PC FAX. You can even attach a cover page note.

All you have to do is set up the receiving parties as Members or Groups in your PC FAX Address Book. Then you can use the Address Book Search feature to quickly find them to address your fax.



- PC FAX is available in Black & White only.
- If you are using Windows<sup>®</sup> XP or Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000
   Professional, we recommend that you are logged on as an administrator.

## Setting up user information



You can access the User Information from the FAX Sending dialog box by clicking 2.

(See Sending a file as a PC-FAX using the Facsimile style on page 19-14.)

Brother PC-FAX Setup		? ×
User Information Send	ting Speed Dial (Facsimile style only)	
Name:	John Doe	
Company:	International Spring Board Assoc.	
Department:	U56	
Phone Number:	908-555-1212	
Fax Number:	908-555-1212	
E-mail:	JD oe@springboard.org	
Address 1:	123 Rose Hill Driver	
Address 2:	Potsville, NJ 08888	
	OK	Cancel

- From the Start menu, select Programs, Brother, Brother MFL Pro Suite, and then select PC-FAX Setup. The Brother PC-FAX Setup dialog box will appear:
- **2** You must enter this information create the Fax Header and Cover Page.
- **3** Click **OK** to save the **User Information**.

## Sending setup

From the **Brother PC-FAX Setup** dialog box, click the **Sending** tab to display the screen below.

other PC-FAX Setup	?
User Information Sending Speed	Dial (Facsimile style only)
Dial Setting	
Outside line access:	
Header	
Include header	
Addressbook file	
C:\PROGRA~1\Brother\BRMFL	LPRO\address.ba2 Browse
The location of the address book ca This can be accessed from the main	an be changed from the PC-FAX Setup window. n PC-FAX transmission screen.
User interface	
C Simple style	
Eacsimile style	
	OK Cancel

### **Outside line access**

If you need to enter a number to access an outside line, enter it here. This is sometimes required by a local PBX telephone system (for example, if you must dial 9, to get an outside line in your office).

#### Include header

To add header information to the top of the fax pages you send, check the Include header box.

## Address Book file

You can select more than one database file to use with the Address Book. To select you must enter the path and file name of the database file.

-OR-

Use the **Browse** button to find the database to select.

## **User interface**

In the **Sending** tab select user interface.

You can choose the Simple Style or the Facsimile Style.

#### Simple style



#### **Facsimile style**

brothe	
	O Cover Page On (P)
	1       2       3       4       5         4       5       6       7       8       9       10         7       8       9       10       10       10       10         7       8       9       10
### **Speed Dial setup**

From the **Brother PC-FAX Setup** dialog box, click the **Speed Dial** tab. (To use this feature you must select the **Facsimile Style** user interface.)

Brother PC-FAX Setup					? ×
User Information Send	ing Speed Dial	(Facs	imile style	e only)	
Address <u>B</u> ook			<u>S</u> peed I	Dial	
Name	Fax		No.	Name	Fax
😰 Sales			<u>9</u> 1 -	Joe Smith	908-555-
ਉ Joe Smith	908-555-123		<b>9</b> 2	John Roller	908-704-2
<u>り</u> John Roller	908-704-231		<u>88</u> 3	Sales	
			4		
		>>	<u>∐</u> 5		
		~	$H_7^6$		
			H:		
			Нš		
			H <sub>10</sub>		
•	Þ		•		E F
Add >>	>			<u>C</u> lrear	
				OK	Cancel
				211	

You can register a Member or Group on each of the ten Speed Dial buttons.

### To register an address in a Speed Dial button:

- 1 Click the Speed Dial button you want to program.
- 2 Click the Member or Group you want to store on the Speed Dial button.
- **3** Click **Add** >> to save it.

### To clear a Speed Dial button:

- **1** Click the Speed Dial button you want to clear.
- 2 Click Clear to erase it.

From the Start menu, select **Programs**, **Brother**, **Brother MFL Pro Suite**, and then click **Address Book**.

The Brother Address Book dialog box will appear:

👩 Brother Address Book			_ 🗆 ×					
<u>Eile E</u> dit <u>H</u> elp	Eile Edit Help							
Name	Fax	E-mail						
1 Sales								
<u> </u> Joe Smith	908-555-1234							
🚺 John Roller	908-704-2312							

### Setting up a Member in the Address Book

In the **Brother Address Book** dialog box you can add, edit and delete stored information of Members and Groups.

1 In the Address Book dialog box, click the 😰 icon to add a Member.

The **Brother Address Book Member Setup** dialog box will appear:

Brother Address Boo	k Member Setup		
Name: 🖸	Joe Smith	<u> </u>	Mr.
C <u>o</u> mpany:	Borther InternationI Corp.		
Department:	Sales	Job Title:	Sales Rep.
Street Address:	100 SomeStreet		
<u>C</u> ity:		State/Province:	N.J.
Zip Code/Post Code:	08807	Country/ <u>R</u> egion:	USA
<u>B</u> usiness Phone:	908-555-1234	Home Phone:	
<u>Е</u> ак:	908-555-1234	Mobile <u>P</u> hone:	
<u>E</u> -Mail:	joe.smith@*****.com		
MFC E-mail Address:			
		OK	Cancel

2 In the Member Setup dialog box, type the Member's information. Name is a required field. Click **OK** to save the information.

### Setting up a Group for Broadcasting

If you often send the same PC-FAX to several Members, you can combine them in a Group.

1 In the **Brother Address Book** dialog box, click the *m* icon to create a Group.

The Group Setup dialog box appears:

Brother Address Book Group Setup						
Group <u>N</u> ame	😰 Sales					
A <u>v</u> ailable Names		<u>G</u> roup Members				
		Joe Smith John Roller				
<u>A</u> dd >>		<< <u>R</u> emove				
		OK Cancel				

- **2** Type the name of the new Group in the **Group Name** field.
- 3 In the Available Names box, select each Member to be included in the Group, and then click Add >>. Members you add to the Group will be added to the Group Members box.
- 4 After all the members you want have been added, click **OK**.

### **Editing Member information**

- 1 Select the Member or Group you want to edit.
- **2** Click the edit **1** icon.
- **3** Change the Member or Group information.
- **4** Click **OK** to save your changes.

### **Deleting a Member or Group**

- 1 Select the Member or Group you want to delete.
- 2 Click the delete 🎬 icon.
- **3** When the **Confirm Item Delete** dialog box appears, click **OK**.

### **Exporting the Address Book**

You can export the whole Address Book to an ASCII text file (\*.csv). Or if you wish, you can select and create a Vcard that will be attached to that Member's outgoing E-mail. (A Vcard is an electronic business card that contains the sender's contact information.)

### To export the whole current Address book:

If you are creating a Vcard, you must first select the member.

If you select Vcard in Step 1, **Save as type**: will be **Vcard (\*.vcf)**.

1 From the Address Book select **File**, point to **Export**, and then click **Text**.

\_\_OR\_\_

Click Vcard and go to Step 5.

**2** From the **Available Items** column, select the data fields you wish to Export and then click **Add** >>.

Select the items in the order you want them listed.

If you are exporting to an ASCII file, select the Divide Character
 Tab or Comma. This selects between a Tab or Comma to separate the data fields.



Select Items	×								
Select items in the order you want to list. You can select the separator character to be inserted between items.									
Available Items	Selected Items								
Name Title Company Department Job Titlet Street Address City State/Province Zip Code/Post Code Country/Region Business Phone	Add >>								
Divide Character									
⊙ <u>I</u> ab									
C <u>C</u> omma	OK Cancel								

**5** Type the name of the file, and then select **Save**.

Save As					? ×
Save in: 🤷	My Documents	- 🗈	<u></u>	<u>r</u>	<b>•••</b>
			_		_
File <u>n</u> ame:					<u>S</u> ave
Save as type:	Text file {*.csv}		•		Cancel

### Importing to the Address Book

You can import ASCII text files (\*.csv) or Vcards (electronic business cards) into your Address Book.

### To import an ASCII text file:

1 From the Address Book select **File**, point to **Import**, and then click **Text**.

-OR-

Click Vcard and go to Step 5.

Select Items	×
Import text file.	ble Items list in the same order they are listed in the haracter used in the Import text file.
Available <u>I</u> tems	Selected Items
Name Title Company Department Job Title Street Address City State/Province Zip Code/Post Code County/Region Business Phone	Add >>
Divide Character	
⊙ <u>I</u> ab	
C <u>C</u> omma	OK Cancel

**2** From the **Available Items** column select the data fields you want to Import, and click **Add** >>.

From the Available Items list select the fields in the same order they are listed in the Import text file.

- **3** Select the **Divide Character Tab** or **Comma** based on the file format you are importing.
- **4** To import the data click **OK**.

**5** Type the name of the file, and then select **Open**.



If you selected a text file in Step 1, the **Files of type**: will be **Text file (\*.csv)**.

### Setting up a Cover Page

From the PC-FAX dialog box click . To access the PC-Fax Cover page setup screen. (See Sending a file as a PC-FAX using the Facsimile style on page 19-14.)

The Brother PC-FAX Cover Page Setup dialog box will appear:

ſo		Comment Cjear
<u>N</u> ame :	Joe Smith	
Department :	Sales	
Company :	Borther InternationI Corp.	
From		- Form
N <u>a</u> me :	Taro Nagoya	
<u>T</u> EL :	0123-456-7890	© Туре 1 СТуде 2
<u>F</u> AX :	0123-456-7890	Import BMP file Browse
<u>E</u> -Mail :	abcd@efgd.co.jp	File name CVRPAGE.BMP
Department :	Sales	Alignment 💿 Left
Company :	Borther InternationI Corp.	C Ce <u>n</u> ter C Right
Address <u>1</u> :	Kawagisi 9-9-9	C <u>W</u> allpaper
Address2 :	MIZUHO NAGOYA	Count cover page

### You can enter information in each field

If you are sending a fax to more than one recipient, the recipient information will not be printed on the Cover Page.

### То

From

### Comment

Type the comment you want to add to the cover page.

### Select Cover Page Form

Select the cover page format you want to use.

### Import BMP file

You can insert a bitmap file, such as your company logo, in the cover page.

Use the browse button to select the BMP file, and then select the alignment style.

### **Count Cover Page**

When the Count Cover Page box is checked, the Cover Page will be included in the page numbering. When this box is not checked, the Cover Page will not be included.

### Sending a file as a PC-FAX using the Facsimile style

- 1 Create a file in Word, Excel, Paint, Draw or any other application on your PC.
- 2 From the File menu, select Print. The Print dialog box will appear:

P	int					? ×
	Printer					
	<u>N</u> ame:	Brother PC-FAX		<b>-</b>	Properties	
	Status:	Ready				
	Туре:	Brother PC-FAX				
	Where:	BRUSB:				
	Comment				Print to file	
	- Print range			Copies		
	• <u>A</u> I			Number of <u>c</u> o	opies: 1 🚊	1
	C Pages	from: 1	to:	11 22	33 🗖 Colar	
	C Select	ion				
				OK	Cancel	

**3** Select **Brother PC-FAX** as your printer, and then click **OK**. The Fax Sending dialog box will appear.



- **4** Enter the fax number using any of the following methods:
  - Using the dial pad enter the number.
  - Click any of the 10 Speed Dial buttons.
  - Click the Address Book button, and then select a Member or Group from the Address Book.

If you make a mistake you can click **Clear** to delete all the entries.

- 5 To include a Cover Page, click O Cover Page On, and then click the Cover Page icon to enter or edit the Cover Page information.
- 6 Click Start to send the fax.

If you want to cancel the fax, click Stop.

### Redial

If you want to redial a number, click **Redial** to scroll through the last five fax numbers, and then click **Start**.

### Sending a file as a PC-FAX using the Simple style

- 1 Create a file in Word, Excel, Paint, Draw or any other application on your PC.
- 2 From the File menu, select Print. The Print dialog box will appear:

Print				? ×
Printer				
<u>N</u> ame:	Brother PC-FAX	-	<u>P</u> roperties	
Status:	Ready			
Type:	Brother PC-FAX			
Where:	BRUSB:			
Comment:			🔲 Print to file	
Print range		Copies		
• <u>A</u> II		Number of <u>c</u> o	pies: 1	3
C Pages	from: 1 to:			
O Select		1 22	3 Cola	te
		OK	Cancel	

**3** Select **Brother PC-FAX** as your printer, and then click **OK**. The FAX Sending dialog box will appear:



- 4 In the To: field, type the fax number of the recipient. You can also use the Address Book to select destination fax numbers by clicking the To: button. If you made a mistake entering a number, click the Clear button to delete all the entries.
- **5** To send a Cover Page and note, click the **Cover Page On** check box.

You can also click the 🔄 icon to create or edit a cover page.

- 6 When you are ready to send your fax, click the Send 👆 icon.
- 7 If you wish to cancel the fax, click the Cancel 🌄 icon.

### 20 Using the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from your PC

(For Windows®)

### Introduction

- For Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 users, to access the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> features from your PC you must first install a Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 update. Please see the Quick Setup Guide for installation instructions.
- 1 Insert a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>, CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> card into your MFC.
- If two or three media cards are inserted at the same time, the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> will read only the card that was put in first. To have access to another card, you must first take out all the cards, and then put in the media card you wish to access.
- 2 In Windows<sup>®</sup> Explorer on your PC, double-click the **Removable Disk** icon. The files and folders that are on the media card will appear on your PC screen.
- If you are using Windows<sup>®</sup> XP and you create a name for the volume label of the media card, the name will appear instead of 'Removable Disk'.
- **3** You can edit the file and save it to another drive on your PC.



When you take out a media card, do the following to keep from damaging it:

- 1 In the My Computer window, right-click the removable disk icon and select "**Eject**" from the Context menu.
- **2** Wait until the LED on the MFC stops blinking before taking out the media card.



Do **NOT** unplug the power cord, USB cable or remove a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>, CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> card from the MFC while it is reading the card (LED is flashing). You will loose your data or damage the card.

If you took out the media card while the LED was flashing, you must immediately restart your PC before putting the media card back in. If you put in another media card before the PC is rebooted, the data on it may be destroyed.

While the MFC is printing from the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup>, the PC cannot access the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> for any other operation.

Magic Gate Memory Stick can be used, but the music data that is stored on the stick can not be read.

### Using ArcSoft<sup>®</sup> PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4

Arcsoft PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4 software is for editing and printing your images including templates that aid you in printing multiple images on one page and the ability to crop, rotate and add special effects to your picture.

### **Overview of basic steps**

- 1 Insert the memory card (CompactFlash<sup>®</sup>, SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> Card) into the appropriate slot on your MFC.
- **2** To start the PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4 software, double-click on the PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> icon on your desktop.
- 3 Click on the Get Photo button.
- 4 Click on the Add Photo button.
- Add Photo enables the user to create an album using the contents of the drive. You can copy photos from the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> to your computer.
- 5 Select the Removable Disk from the pull down list.



- **6** Click on the individual images that you want to create thumbnails for.
- 7 Click **Open** to generate thumbnails.

Add Thumbn	ails		? ×
Look jn: 🕞	Removable Disk (G:)	- 🗈 💆	<b>1</b>
Mr_Chubb	os.jpg		
File <u>n</u> ame:	Mr_Chubbs.jpg		<u>O</u> pen
Files of <u>type</u> :	All Image Files	•	Cancel

8 Select the thumbnail of the image you want to use, and then click **Okay**.

# 21 Using your MFC with a Macintosh<sup>®</sup>

### Setting up your USB-equipped Apple<sup>®</sup> Macintosh<sup>®</sup> G3, G4 or iMac<sup>™</sup> or iBook<sup>™</sup> with Mac OS 8.6-9.2 or Mac OS X 10.1/10.2.1 or greater

Before you can connect the MFC to your Macintosh<sup>®</sup>, you must buy a USB cable that is not longer than 6 feet (1.8 metres). Do not connect the MFC to a USB port on a key board or a non-powered USB hub.

The features supported by the MFC will depend on the operating system you are using. The chart below shows which features are supported.

Feature	MAC OS		MAC OS X		
	8.6	9.X	10.1	10.2.1 or greater <sup>*2</sup>	
Printing	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Scanning (TWAIN)	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	
PC-FAX sending	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Remote Setup	No	No	Yes	Yes	
PhotoCapture Center	*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	

\*1 You need to download USB Mass Storage Support 1.3.5 from Apple<sup>®</sup> Web site (www.apple.com).

\*2 For Mac OS X 10.2 user, please upgrade to Mac OS X 10.2.1 or greater. (The latest information for Mac OS X, please visit at: http://solutions.brother.com)

## Using the Brother printer driver with your Apple<sup>®</sup> Macintosh<sup>®</sup> (OS 8.6-9.2)

### To select a Printer:

**1** Open the **Chooser** from the Apple menu.



2 Click the MFL Pro Color icon. On the right side of the Chooser window, click the printer you want to print to. Close the Chooser.

### To print a document:

3 From the application software such as PaperPort<sup>®</sup>, click File menu and select Page Setup. You can change the settings for Paper Size, Paper Thickness, Paper Source, Orientation, and Scaling and then click OK.

Paper Size :	Eetter	() A4	
	🔘 Legal	() A5	Cancel
Orientation :	© Executive	♀ Post Card ▼ Scaling : 100 % □ Near Edge Print	Paper Help
Paper Thickne	ess : Regular	▼	
Paper Source	: Feeder	▼	Default

**4** From application software such as PaperPort, click **File** menu and select **Print**. Click **Print** to start printing.

brother MFC-XXX	1.8.0 Print
Output : 🛛 🔽 🔻	
Copies : 1	
Pages : 🖲 All 🕥 From :	To : Option
Quality : Normal 🔻	Address
Media Type : Plain Paper	▼ Help
Color/Mono : Color Mono	Save Settings Default

If you want to change Copies, Pages, Quality, Media Type and Color/Mono, select your settings before clicking Print. Click the Option button to change Document and Printing Options.

Option Setup					ОК
Document :		Photo r Matchin om Settin	<u> </u>	Custom	Cancel Help
🗹 Bi-Directio	onal Prin	ting			Default

### Using the Brother Printer Driver with Your Apple<sup>®</sup> Macintosh<sup>®</sup> (OS X 10.1/10.2.1 or greater)

### Choosing page setup options

From application software such as TextEdit, click the **File** menu and select **Page Setup**. Make sure *MFC-4820C* is selected in the **Format for** pop-up menu. You can change the settings for **Paper Size, Orientation** and **Scaling**, then click **OK**.

Settings:	Page Attributes	*
Format for:	MFC-XXX	÷ .
	Brother MFL Pro Color	
Paper Size:	Letter	+
	8.50 in. x 11.00 in.	
Orientation:		
Scale:	100 %	
?	Cancel	ОК

### Printing a document

From application software such as TextEdit, click the **File** menu and select **Print**. The print dialog box appears, click **Print**.

Make sure *MFC-4820C* is selected in the **Printer** pop-up menu. You can select the number of copies or a range of pages to print.

Printer: MF	C-XXX	*
Presets: Sta	ndard	*
Copies & Pages	*	
Copies: 1	Collated	
Pages: O	All From: 1 to: 1	
0	Preview	Cancel Print

### **Choosing printing options**

To control special printing features of the printer, choose **Print Settings** in the Print dialog box. You can change **Quality**, **Media Type**, **Color/Mono** and **Bi-Directional Printing** settings.

Printer: MFC-XXX	
Presets: Standard	•
<ul> <li>✓ Copies &amp; Pages Layout Output Options</li> <li>Print Settings Color Control Summary</li> </ul>	Collated
Save Custom Setting	(Preview) Cancel Print
Printer: MFC-XXX Presets: Standard Print Settings	•
Quality	0
Normal	Media Type: Plain Paper 😝
G Fine Super Fine	Paper Thickness: Regular 🛟
Color/Mono	Si-Directional Printing
Color Color Mono	

## Sending a fax from your Macintosh<sup>®</sup> application

You can send a fax directly from a  ${\sf Macintosh}^{{\sf B}}$  application by doing the following:

- 1 Create a document in a Macintosh application.
- **2** To send a fax, select **Print** from the **File** menu. The Printer dialog box will appear:

brother MFC-XXX	1.8.0 Print
Output : Printer 🔻	
Copies : 1	Cancer
Pages : 💿 All 🕥 From : 🔤 To : 🤤	Option
Quality : 🛛 Normal 🔍	Address
Media Type : 🛛 Plain Paper 🛛 🔻	Help
Color/Mono : Color Mono Save Settin	ngs Default

When *Printer* is selected, the top button shows **Print** and the **Address** button is grayed.

3 From the **Output** pull-down menu, select Facsimile.

	1.8.0 Send Fax
Output: Facsimile ▼ Copies:	Cancel
Pages:  All  From: To: Quality: Normal	Option
Media Type : Plain Paper  Color/Mono :	Address Help
Color Mono Save Setting	5 Default

When *Facsimile* is selected, the top button changes to **Send Fax** and the **Address** button will be available.

### 4 Click Send Fax.

The Send Fax dialog box appears:

nput Fax Number :		Destination Fax Numbers :	
tored Fax Number	s:		
Barble	908-477-8888 🔺 👔		
Bob	908-869-8888	~~	
Frank	908-236-8888		
Tony	908-569-8888		
	-		-

The **Send Fax** dialog box has two list boxes. The left box shows all the previously **Stored Fax Numbers** and the right box shows the **Destination Fax Numbers** as you select them.

**5** To address the fax, type a fax number in the **Input Fax Number** box.

\_\_OR\_\_

Select a name or number from the **Stored Fax Numbers** box, and then click . The name or number of the person you are sending the fax to will appear in the **Destination Fax Numbers** box.

You can select several stored numbers at once by using the Shift and Ctrl keys.

6 If you want, you can add your new members to the Stored Fax Number at this time by clicking New to open the address book. (See Setting up your Address Book on page 21-8.)
 —OR—

You can add a new Group by clicking **Group** to open the address book. (See *Adding a new Group* on page 21-9.)

7 When you are finished addressing your fax, click **Send Fax**.

To select and only send certain pages of the document, click **OK** to go to the Print dialog box.

If you click **Send Fax** without addressing your fax, the following error message will appear:



Click OK to go to the Send Fax dialog box.

### Setting up your Address Book

You can add new Members and Groups to your Address Book, while you are addressing a fax.

### Adding a new Member

**1** To add a new Member to the **Address Book**, in the Facsimile dialog box click **Address**.

The Address Book dialog box will appear:

tored Fax Numbers	:	
Barbie Bob Frank Tony	908-477-8888 908-869-8888 908-236-8888 908-569-8888	Cancel
New	iroup Edit	Delete

**2** Click **New**. The following dialog box will appear:

Name :	ОК
Fax# :	Cancel
Memo :	

- **3** Type the name and fax number.
- **4** You can store a comment in the Memo field (up to 15 characters).
- **5** Click **OK** to go back to the **Address Book** dialog box.

### Adding a new Group

You can set up a Group of people that you send the same fax to.

1 Click Group.

The Group Setting dialog box will appear.

		Group Name :	
tored Fax Numbers :		Team1	
Barbie	908-477-9256		
Bob	908-869-参考染血		
Tony	908-569-3282	•	
Frank	908-236-5838		•

- 2 In the **Group Name** field, type a name for your Group.
- **3** In the **Stored Fax Numbers** box select the people for your Group Click.

The selected people will appear in the box under the **Group Name** field.

### 4 Click **OK** to go back to the **Address Book** dialog box.



**5** Click **OK** to go back to the Print/Facsimile dialog box.

brother MFC-XXX	1.8.0 Send Fax
Output : Facsimile 🔻 Copies :	Cancel
Pages :  All  From : Quality : Normal  Media Type : Plain Paper Color/Mono :	To: Option Address Help
Color Mono	Save Settings Default

6 Then if you are ready to send your fax, click Send Fax.

# Using the Brother TWAIN scanner driver with your Macintosh<sup>®</sup> (For Mac OS 8.6-9.2 and OS X 10.2.1 or greater)

The Brother MFC software includes a TWAIN Scanner driver for Macintosh®. You can use this Macintosh® TWAIN Scanner driver with any applications that support the TWAIN specifications.

### Accessing the scanner

Run your Macintosh® TWAIN-compliant application software. The first time you use the Brother TWAIN driver (MFL Pro/P2500), set it as the default by choosing Select Source (or the other menu name to select the device). Afterwards, for each document you scan choose Acquire Image or Scan. The scanner setup dialog box will appear.

The screen shown in this section are from Mac OS 9. The screen on your Macintosh<sup>®</sup> may vary depending on your Operating System.

<sup>9</sup> The method of selecting the source or choosing to scan may vary depending on the application software you are using.

Brother MFLPro Scanner			
Image       21.3         Resolution:       200 x 200 dpi         Color Type:       Black & White         Scanning Area       Letter 8.5 x 11 in         Width:       8.5         Height:       11         Unit:       mm         Adjust	Scanning Area		
Default	Cancel Start PreScan		
·	(OS 8 6–9 2		

If you are using PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 5.5 for Mac, from the ScanSoft menu (located below the ScanSoft icon on the Macintosh desktop menu bar), choose Acquire Image. For details about the ScanSoft menu selections, please refer to the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> Documentation located in the PaperPort<sup>®</sup> 5.5 Folder/User Docs/Splashug.pdf file.



### Scanning an image into your Macintosh®

You can scan a whole page

-OR-

scan a portion after prescanning the document.

### Scanning a whole page

- 1 Place the original face down on the scanner glass.
- **2** Adjust the following settings, if needed, in the Scanner Setup dialog box:

Resolution

Color Type

**Scanning Area** 

**Brightness** 

Contrast

**Color Sync** 

**3** Click **Start**.

When scanning has finished, the image will appear in your graphics application.

### PreScanning an image

PreScanning allows you to scan an image quickly at a low resolution. A thumbnail version will appear in the **Scanning Area**. This is only a preview of the image, so you can see how it will look. The **PreScan** button will allow you to crop unwanted areas from the images. When you are satisfied with the preview, click **Start** to scan the image.

- 1 Insert the original face down on the scanner glass.
- 2 Click PreScan.

The whole image will be scanned into your Macintosh<sup>®</sup> and will appear in the **Scanning Area** of the Scanner dialog box:

**3** To scan a portion of the prescanned image, click and drag the mouse to crop it.



- 4 Make your adjustments to the settings for Resolution, Color Type (Gray Scale), Brightness, Contrast, and Size in the Scanner Setup dialog box.
- **5** Click **Start**. This time only the cropped area of the original will appear in the Scanning Area.
- **6** In your editing software, you can refine the image.

### Image

### Resolution

From the **Resolution** pop-up menu choose the scanning resolution. Higher resolutions use more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

Brother MFLPro Scanner				
	100 x 100 dpi			
_ Image	150 x 150 dpi	2.1.0 Scanning Area		
Resolution:	🗸 200 x 200 dpi			
Color Type:	300 x 300 dpi	F		
color type.	400 x 400 dpi			
_ Scanning Area	600 x 600 dpi			
	1200 x 1200 dpi			
Width: 210	2400 x 2400 dpi			
	4800 x 4800 dpi			
Length: 297	9600 x 9600 dpi			
Unit: 💿 m	nm 🔿 inch	297		

### **Color Type**

*Black & White*—Set the image Type to *Black and White* for text or line art. For photographic images, set the image type to Gray (Error diffusion) or True Gray.

*Gray (Error Diffusion)*—is used for documents with photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated gray images by placing black dots instead of the true gray dots in a specific matrix instead of true gray dots.)

*True Gray*—is used for documents with photographic images or graphics. This mode is more exact because it uses up to 256 shades of gray. It requires the most memory and takes the longest transfer time.

*Colors*—Choose either 256 Color, which scans up to 256 colors or 24-bit color which scans up to 16.8 million colors. Although using 24-bit color creates an image with the most accurate colors, the image file will be about three times larger than a file created with 256 Color.

Brother MFLPro Scanner			
Image         Resolution:       200 x 200 dpi         Color Type:       ✓ Black & White         Gray (Chror Diffusion)         Scanning Aree         Width:       8.5         24 Bit Color         ColorSync         Intent:       Perceptual (Images) ¢         Scanner Profile:       Brother MFC XXX ¢         Use Photo Paper	Scanning Area		
Default	Cancel Start PreScan		

### **Scanning Area**

Set the Size to one of the following:

- Letter (8.5  $\times$  11 inches)
- A4 (210 × 297 mm)
- A5 (148 × 210 mm)
- B5 (182 × 257 mm)
- Executive (7.25 × 10.5 inches)
- Business Card (90 × 60 mm)
- Custom (adjusts it from  $0.35 \times 0.35$  inches to  $8.5 \times 11.69$  inches)

After you choose a custom size, you can adjust the scanning area. Click and hold the mouse button as you drag the mouse to crop the image.

Width: Enter the width of the custom size.

Length: Enter the length of the custom size.

### **Business Card Size**

To scan business cards, select the Business Card size (90  $\times$  60 mm) and place the business card at the center of scanner glass.

When you are scanning photographs or other images to use in a word processor or other graphics application, it is a good idea to try different settings for the Contrast, Mode and Resolution to determine which settings look the best.

### Adjusting the Image

### Brightness

Adjust the **Brightness** setting to get the best image. The Brother TWAIN Scanner driver offers 100 Brightness levels (-50 to 50). The default value is 0, representing an 'average' setting.

You can set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slide bar to the right to lighten the image or to the left to darken the image. You can also type a value in the box to set the level. Click **OK**.

If the scanned image is too light, set a lower Brightness level and scan the image again.

If the image is too dark, set a higher Brightness level and scan the image again.



### Contrast

You can only adjust the **Contrast** level when you have selected one of the Gray Scale settings, it is not available when you have selected Black & White is selected as the Color Type.

Increasing the **Contrast** level (by dragging the slide bar to the right) emphasizes dark and light areas of the image, while reducing the **Contrast** level (by dragging the slide bar to the left) reveals more detail in the gray areas. Instead of using the slide bar, you can type a value in the box to set the Contrast. Click **OK**.

### **Color Sync Dialog**

Brother MFLPro Scanner			
Image Resolution: 200 x 200 dpi Color Type: Black & White	Scanning Area		
Scanning Area Letter 8.5 x 11 in Width: 8.5 Length: 11 Unit: mm inch			
Adjust Adjust Image ColorSync Intent:   ColorSync Intent:   ColorSync Intent:   ColorSync Intent:   ColorSync Intent:  ColorSync Intent:  ColorSync Intent:  ColorIntentic	÷		
Default	Cancel Start PreScan		

*Perceptual Matching*—All the colors of a given gamut are scaled proportionally to fit within another gamut. The purpose is to keep maintains the balance between the colors of the image. This is the best way to get realistic images, for photographs and other realistic graphics.

Saturation Matching—The relative saturation of colors is maintained from gamut to gamut. So basically the colors are shifted to the edge of the gamut to get the most saturated color possible. Rendering the image using this intent gives the strongest colors and is the best choice for bar graphs and pie charts, in which the actual color displayed is less important than its vividness.

*Relative Colorimetric Matching*—The colors that fall within the gamuts of both devices are left unchanged. Some colors in both images will be exactly the same, a useful outcome when colors must match quantitatively. What that means is that if the color is inside the gamut, it will stay the same color. However, if the color is outside the gamut, it will be mapped to the edge of the gamut. This intent is best suited for logos or "spot colors" where color must match.

Absolute Colorimetric Matching—A close appearance match may be achieved over most of the tonal range, but if the minimum density of the idealized image is different from that of the output image, the areas of the image that are left blank will be different. Colors that fall within the gamuts of both devices are left unchanged.

### **Scanner Profile**

Select your Brother MFC.

Brother MFLPro Scanner				
Image Resolution Color Type		2.1.3 <b>†</b>	Scanning Are	a
Scanning Ai	rea Letter 8.5 x 11 in	\$		
Width: 8	.5	_		
Height: 1	1			
Unit: C	mm 💿 inch		11-	-
Adjust				
O Custom	Adjust Image			
ColorSync				
Intent: Pe	erceptual (Images)	ŧ		
Scanner Pr	ofile: 🗸 MFC-XXX	ŧ		
🗌 Use Photo	MFC-XXX	ד	Li	8.5
Default			Cancel	Start PreScan

### MFC Remote Setup (Mac OS 10.1/10.2.1 or greater)

The MFC Remote Setup application allows you to quickly set up your MFC by taking advantage of the ease and speed of programming on your Macintosh<sup>®</sup>. When you access this application, the settings on your MFC will be downloaded automatically to your Macintosh<sup>®</sup> and displayed on your computer screen. If you change the settings, you can upload them directly to the MFC.

The 'MFC Remote Setup' application icon is in Macintosh HD/Library/Printers/Brother/Utility.



### OK

This starts the process of uploading the data to the MFC and exiting the remote setup program. If an error message is displayed enter the correct data again. Click **OK**.

### Cancel

This exits the remote setup application without uploading the data to the MFC.

### Apply

This uploads the data to the MFC, but does not exit the remote setup application.

### Print

This command prints the selected items on the MFC. You can not print the data until it is uploaded to the MFC. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the MFC and click **Print**.

### Export

This command saves the current configuration settings to a file.

### Import

This command reads the settings from a file.

21 - 20 USING YOUR MFC WITH A MACINTOSH®
# Using the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> from a Macintosh<sup>®</sup>

You can access the Media Card inserted into the MFC from a Macintosh<sup>®</sup>.

#### For Mac OS 8.6 only

You have to download "USB Mass Storage Support 1.3.5" software from the web site of Apple<sup>®</sup> Macintosh<sup>®</sup>.

- 1 Insert a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>, CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> card into your MFC. The removal disk icon will appear on the Desktop.
- If you create a name for the volume level of the media card, the name will appear instead of "Removable Disk".
- 2 Double-click the Removable Disk icon. The files and folders that are on the media card will be displayed on your screen.
- **3** You can edit the file and save it to another drive on your Macintosh<sup>®</sup>.



4 Quit all running applications that are stored on the media card and drag the removal disk icon onto Trash before you remove the media card from the MFC.

<sup>y</sup> The Photo Capture Center<sup>™</sup> will only read one card at a time so do not insert more than one media card at a time.

- Do NOT unplug the power cord, USB cable or remove a SmartMedia<sup>®</sup>, CompactFlash<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> card from the MFC while it is reading the card (LED is flashing). You will loose your data or damage the card.

While the MFC is printing from the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup>, the Macintosh<sup>®</sup> cannot access the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> for another operation.



Magic Gate Memory Stick can be used, but the music data that is stored on the stick can not be read.

# Using ArcSoft<sup>®</sup> PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4

Arcsoft PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4 software is for editing and printing your images including templates that aid you in printing multiple images on one page and the ability to crop, rotate and add special effects to your picture.

#### **Overview of basic steps**

- Insert the memory card (CompactFlash<sup>®</sup>, SmartMedia<sup>®</sup> or Memory Stick<sup>®</sup> Card) into the appropriate slot on your MFC.
- **2** To start the PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> 4 software, double-click on the PhotoPrinter<sup>®</sup> icon on your desktop.
- 3 Click on the Get Photo button.
- 4 Click on the Add Photo button.
- Add Photo enables the user to create an album using the contents of the drive. You can copy photos from the PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> to your computer.
- 5 Select the Volume name from the **Open** dialog.

Show:	All Image Files		+
From:	Unlabeled		+
Macintosh HD Network Unlabeled	Þ	Sample01.jpg Sample02.jpg Sample03.jpg	
Go to:		•	)4 ►

6 Select the image file and click **Open**.



USING YOUR MFC WITH A MACINTOSH® 21 - 23

# 22 Important information

# Standard telephone and FCC Notices

These notices are in effect on models sold and used in the United States only.

This equipment is hearing-aid compatible. When programming emergency numbers or making test calls to emergency numbers:

- Remain on the line and briefly explain to the dispatcher the reason for the call before hanging up.
- Perform these activities in the off-peak hours, such as early morning or late evening.

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. On the backside of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US: AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

You may safely connect this equipment to the telephone line by means of a standard modular jack, USOC RJ11C.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See installation instructions for details.

The REN is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX.The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (e.g., 06 is a REN of 0.6). For earlier products, the REN is separately shown on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice isn't practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If trouble is experienced with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, please contact Brother Customer Service. (See *Brother numbers* on page i.) If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, call your telephone company or a qualified installer.

If you are not able to solve a problem with your MFC, call Brother Customer Service. (See *Brother numbers* on page i.)

#### 

For protection against the risk of electrical shock, always disconnect all cables from the wall outlet before servicing, modifying or installing the equipment.

This equipment may not be used on coin service lines provided by the telephone company or connected to party lines.

Brother cannot accept any financial or other responsibilities that may be the result of your use of this information, including direct, special or consequential damages. There are no warranties extended or granted by this document.

## 

#### Important—About the interface cable

This machine has been certified to comply with FCC standards, which are applied to the USA only. A grounded plug should be plugged into a grounded AC outlet after checking the rating of the local power supply for the printer to operate properly and safely.

#### Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Declaration of Conformity (USA only)

Responsible Party:	Brother International Corporation
	100 Somerset Corporate Boulevard
	Bridgewater, NJ 08807-0911 USA
	TEL: (908) 704-1700

declares, that the products

Product Name: MFC-4820C

comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Call the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### Important

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Brother Industries, Ltd. could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### Industry Canada Compliance Statement (Canada only)

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil num ique de la classe B est conforme la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

#### International ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Compliance Statement

As an ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> Partner, Brother Industries, Ltd. has determined that product meets the ENERGY STAR<sup>®</sup> guidelines for energy efficiency.



# Important safety instructions

- **1** Read all of these instructions.
- 2 Save them for later reference.
- **3** Follow all warnings and instructions marked on the product.
- **4** Unplug this product from the wall outlet before cleaning. Do not use liquid or aerosol cleaners. Use a damp cloth for cleaning.
- **5** Do not use this product near water.
- **6** Do not place this product on an unstable cart, stand, or table. The product may fall, causing serious damage to the product.
- 7 Slots and openings in the cabinet and the back or bottom are provided for ventilation; to ensure reliable operation of the product and to protect it from overheating, these openings must not be blocked or covered. The openings should never be blocked by placing the product on a bed, sofa, rug, or other similar surface. This product should never be placed near or over a radiator or heater. This product should never be placed in a built-in installation unless proper ventilation is provided.
- 8 This product should be operated from the type of power source indicated on the label. If you are not sure of the type of power available, call your dealer or local power company.
- **9** This product is equipped with a 3-wire grounding type plug, a plug having a third (grounding) pin. This plug will fit into only a grounding-type power outlet. This is a safety feature. If you are unable to insert the plug into the outlet, call your electrician to replace your obsolete outlet. Do not defeat the purpose of the grounding-type plug.
- **10** Do not allow anything to rest on the power cord. Do not place this product where people can walk on the cord.
- **11** If an extension cord is used with this product, make sure that the total ampere ratings on the products plugged into the extension cord do not exceed the extension cord ampere rating. Also, make sure that the total of all products plugged into the wall outlet does not exceed 15 amperes (USA only).
- **12** Do not place anything in front of the MFC that will block received faxes. Do not place anything in the path of received faxes.
- **13** Wait until pages have exited the MFC before picking them up.

- 14 Never push objects of any kind into this product through cabinet slots, since they may touch dangerous voltage points or short out parts resulting in the risk of fire or electric shock. Never spill liquid of any kind on the product.
- **15** Do not attempt to service this product yourself, as opening or removing covers may expose you to dangerous voltage points and/or other risks, and may void your warranty. Refer all servicing to Authorized Service Personnel. A list of Authorized Service Centers has been included for your convenience, or you may contact Brother Customer Service for your nearest Brother Authorized Service Center. (See *Brother numbers* on page i.)
- **16** Unplug this product from the wall outlet and refer servicing to Authorized Service Personnel under the following conditions:
  - When the power cord is damaged or frayed.
  - If liquid has been spilled into the product.
  - If the product has been exposed to rain or water.
  - If the product does not operate normally when the operating instructions are followed. Adjust only those controls that are covered by the operating instructions. Improper adjustment of other controls may result in damage and will often require extensive work by a qualified technician to restore the product to normal operation.
  - If the product has been dropped or the cabinet has been damaged.
  - If the product exhibits a distinct change in performance, indicating a need for service.
- **17** To protect your product against power surges, we recommend the use of a power protection device (Surge Protector).

# Trademarks

The Brother logo is a registered trademark of Brother Industries, Ltd.

Brother is a registered trademark of Brother Industries, Ltd.

PhotoCapture Center is a trademark of Brother International Corporation.

Multi-Function Link and True2Life are registered trademarks of Brother International Corporation.

© Copyright 2003 Brother Industries, Ltd. All rights reserved.

Windows and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft in the U.S. and other countries.

Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

PaperPort and TextBridge are registered trademarks of ScanSoft, Inc.

PhotoPrinter 4 is a registered trademark of ArcSoft.

Microdrive is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

SmartMedia is a registered trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

CompactFlash is a registered trademark of SanDisk Corporation.

Memory Stick is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

MagicGate is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other brand and product names mentioned in this manual are registered trademarks of their respective companies.

# 23 Troubleshooting and routine maintenance

# Troubleshooting

#### IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call the country where you bought the MFC. Calls must be made *from within* that country.

#### **Error Messages**

As with any sophisticated office product, errors may occur. If this happens, your MFC identifies the problem and displays an error message. The most common error messages are shown below.

You can correct most problems by yourself. If you need additional help, call the Brother fax back system (USA only).

ERROR MESSAG	ERROR MESSAGES			
ERROR MESSAGE	CAUSE	ACTION		
CHECK CARTRIDGE	An ink cartridge is not properly installed.	Take out the ink cartridge and put it in again seating it properly. (See <i>Replacing the ink cartridges</i> on page 23-18.)		
CHECK PAPER SIZE	Paper is not the correct size.	Reload the correct size of paper (Letter, Legal or A4), and then press <b>Fax Start</b> .		
CHECK PAPER	The MFC is out of paper.	Add paper, and then press Fax Start.		
COMM. ERROR	Poor phone line quality caused a communication error.	Try the call again. If the problem continues, call the telephone company and ask them to check your phone line.		
CONNECTION FAIL	You tried to poll a fax machine that is not in Polled Waiting mode.	Check the other fax machine's polling setup.		
COVER OPEN	The scanner cover is not closed completely.	Pull the Scanner Cover Release Lever and lift the scanner cover and then close it again.		
DISCONNECTED	The other person or other person's fax machine stopped the call.	Try to send or receive again.		

In USA only: 1-800-521-2846

ERROR MESSAGES				
ERROR MESSAGE	CAUSE	ACTION		
DATA REMAINS	Print data remains in the MFC's memory because the computer is hung up.	Re-start printing from your computer.		
	Print data remains in the MFC's memory. The USB cable was unplugged while the computer was sending the data to the MFC.	Press <b>Stop/Exit</b> . The MFC will cancel the job and eject the page that is being printed.		
DR MODE IN USE	The MFC is set to Distinctive Ring mode. You can not change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set Distinctive Ring to OFF. (See <i>Turning off the Distinctive Ring</i> on page 5-12.)		
HIGH TEMPERATURE	The print heads are too warm.	Allow the MFC to cool down.		
INK EMPTY	One or more of the ink cartridges is empty. The MFC will stop all print operations. While memory is available, black and white faxes will be received into memory. If a sending machine has a color fax, the MFC's 'handshake' will request that the fax be sent as black and white. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the color fax will be received into memory as a black and white fax.	Replace the ink cartridges. (See <i>Replacing the ink cartridges</i> on page 23-18.)		
LOW TEMPERATURE	The print heads are too cold.	Allow the MFC to warm up.		
MACHINE ERROR XX	The MFC has a mechanical problem.	Call Brother Customer Service. In USA: 1-800-284-4329 In Canada: 1-877-BROTHER In Montreal: (514) 685-6464		
MEDIA ERROR	The media card is either bad or not formatted.	Reinsert the correct media card.		
NEAR EMPTY	One or more of the ink cartridges are running out of ink. If a sending machine has a color fax, the MFC's 'handshake' will request that the fax be sent as black and white. If the sending machine has the ability to convert it, the color fax will be received into memory as a black and white fax.	Order a new ink cartridge. (See Ordering accessories and supplies on page ii.)		
NO FILE	The media card in the media drive does not contain a .JPG file.	Reinsert the correct media card.		
NO RESPONSE/ BUSY	The number you dialed does not answer or is busy.	Verify the number and try again.		
NOT REGISTERED	You tried to access a Speed Dial number that is not programmed.	Set up the Speed Dial number. (See <i>Storing Speed Dial numbers</i> on page 7-1.)		
OUT OF MEMORY	The data is too large for the MFC's memory.	(See Out of memory message on page 11-2.)		
PAPER JAM	The paper is jammed in the MFC.	(See <i>Printer Jam or Paper Jam</i> on page 23-3.)		
UNSUPPORTED CARD	You inserted a media card that can not be used.	Reinsert the correct media card.		

#### Printer Jam or Paper Jam

Remove the jammed paper depending on where it is jammed in the MFC.

Paper is jammed in the paper tray.

1 Push the lever as shown below, and remove the jammed paper.



Paper is jammed inside the paper tray.

1 Remove any paper from the paper tray that is not jammed.



**2** Pull the paper tray out of the MFC.



**3** Pull up the jammed paper to remove it.



4 Reinstall the paper tray.



#### Paper is jammed inside the MFC.

1 Open the scanner cover by releasing the scanner cover release lever and lifting the scanner cover.



**2** Remove the jammed paper.



**3** Close the scanner cover.

#### $\bigcirc$

Do not touch the ink tube because it can cause damage to the machine itself.



#### If you are having difficulty with your MFC

If you think there is a problem with the way your faxes look, *make a copy first*. If the copy looks good, the problem is probably not your MFC. Check the chart below and follow the troubleshooting tips.

DIFFICULTY	SUGGESTIONS
Printing or Receiving Faxes	
Condensed print and white streaks across the page or the top and bottom of sentences are cut off.	This can be caused by static or interference on the telephone line. You can make a copy using the <b>Black Copy</b> key to see if the same problem occurs. If the copy looks bad, call Brother Customer Service at 1-800-284-4329 ( <b>in USA</b> ), 1-877-BROTHER ( <b>in Canada</b> ) or (514) 685-6464 ( <b>in Montreal</b> ).
Poor quality print.	Make sure the Printer Driver or Paper Type setting in the menu matches the type of paper you are using. (See <i>Media Type</i> on page 14-3 See <i>Setting the Paper Type</i> on page 4-1.) If you are using plain paper, try using the types of recommended paper. (See <i>Paper</i> on page 2-1.) Don't handle the paper until the ink is dry. Adjust the Vertical Alignment. (See <i>Print Quality Check</i> on page 23-9.)
Smudged stain at the top center of the printed page.	Make sure the paper is not too thick. (See Paper on page 2-1.)
Printing is too dark or too light.	Make sure your ink cartridges are fresh. Cartridges are good for up to two years, after that the ink may become clogged. Cartridge expiration dates are printed on the package. Make sure the Printer Driver matches the type of paper you are using. (See <i>Media Type</i> on page 14-3.) Try using the recommended types of paper. (See <i>Paper</i> on page 2-1.) The recommended environment for your MFC is between 68°F to 91°F (20°C to 33°C).
Printing appears dirty or ink seems to run.	Make sure you are using the proper types of paper. (See <i>Paper</i> on page 2-1.) Don't handle the paper until the ink is dry. The recommended environment for your MFC is between 68°F to 91°F (20°C to 33°C).
White lines appear in text or graphics.	Clean the print heads. (See Cleaning the print head on page 23-9.)
Vertical black lines when receiving.	The sender's scanner may be dirty. Ask the sender to make a copy to see if the problem is on with the sending machine. Try receiving from another fax machine. If the problem continues, call Brother Customer Service at 1-800-284-4329 ( <b>in USA</b> ), 1-877-BROTHER ( <b>in Canada</b> ) or (514) 685-6464 ( <b>in Montreal</b> ).
Received color fax prints only in black and white.	Replace the color ink cartridges that are empty or nearly empty, and then ask the other person to send the color fax again. (See <i>Replacing</i> <i>the ink cartridges</i> on page 23-18.) Check that Fax Storage is set to OFF. (See <i>Setting Fax Storage</i> on page 8-1.)
Left and Right margins are cut off.	Turn on Auto Reduction. (See <i>Printing a reduced incoming fax (Auto Reduction)</i> on page 5-6.)

DIFFICULTY	SUGGESTIONS
Phone Line or Connections	
The MFC does not answer when called.	Make sure the MFC is in the correct receiving mode for your setup. (See <i>Basic receiving operations</i> on page 5-1.) Check for a dial tone. If possible, call your MFC to hear it answer. If there is still no answer, check the telephone line cord connection. If there is no ringing when you call your MFC, ask your telephone company to check the line.
Sending Faxes	
Poor sending quality.	Try changing your resolution to ${\tt FINE}$ or ${\tt S}$ . ${\tt FINE}.$ Make a copy to check your MFC's scanner operation.
Transmission Verification Report says 'Result:NG' or 'Result:ERROR'.	There is probably temporary noise or static on the line. Try sending the fax again. If you send a PC FAX message and get 'Result:NG' or, on the Transmission Verification Report, your MFC may be out of memory. To gain extra memory, you can turn off Fax Storage (See <i>Setting Fax Storage</i> on page 8-1), print fax messages in memory (See <i>Printing a fax from the memory</i> on page 5-8) or cancel a Delayed Fax or Polling Job (See <i>You can cancel a job while you are scanning it into memory by pressing Stop/Exit.</i> on page 6-10). If the problem continues, ask the telephone company to check your phone line.
Vertical black lines when sending.	If the copy you made shows the same problem, your scanner is dirty. (See <i>Cleaning the scanner</i> on page 23-17.)
Handling Incoming Calls	
MFC 'Hears' Voice as CNG Tone.	If your MFC is set to Easy Receive ON, it is more sensitive to sounds. Your MFC may mistakenly interpret certain voices or music on the line as a calling fax machine and respond with fax receiving tones. Deactivate the fax by pressing <b>Stop/Exit</b> . Try avoiding this problem by turning Easy Receive to OFF. (See <i>Easy Receive</i> on page 5-5.)
Sending a Fax Call to the MFC.	If you answered at the MFC, press <b>Fax Start</b> and hang up immediately. If you answered on an extension phone, press your Fax Receive Code (default setting is ( $\times$ 51). When your MFC answers, hang up.
Custom features on a single line.	If you have Call Waiting, Call Waiting/Caller ID, Ring Master, Voice Mail, an alarm system or any other custom feature on a single phone line with your MFC, it may create a problem sending or receiving fax data. For example: If you are sending or receiving a fax message while a custom feature signal comes through on the line, the signal can temporarily interrupt or disrupt the fax data. Brother's ECM feature should help overcome this problem. This condition is related to the telephone system industry and is common to all devices that send and receive data on a single, shared line with custom features. If avoiding a slight interruption is crucial to your business, we recommend a separate phone line with no custom features.
Printer Difficulties	
Horizontal lines appear in text or graphics.	Clean the print head. (See <i>Cleaning the print head</i> on page 23-9.) If you clean the print heads five times and the print has not improved, call Brother Customer Service at 1-800-284-4329 ( <b>in USA</b> ), 1-877-BROTHER ( <b>in Canada</b> ) or (514) 685-6464 ( <b>in Montreal</b> ).
Scanning Difficulties	
TWAIN errors appear while scanning.	Make sure the Brother TWAIN driver is selected as the primary source. In PaperPort, click Scan in the File menu and select the Brother TWAIN driver.

DIFFICULTY	SUGGESTIONS
Software Difficulties	
Cannot perform '2 in 1 or 4 in 1' printing.	Check that the paper size setting in the application and in the printer driver are the same.
Cannot print when using Paint Brush.	Try setting the Display setting to '256 colors.'
Cannot print when using Adobe Illustrator.	Try to reduce the print resolution.
Thick lines and thin lines appear alternately. (banding)	<ol> <li>Open the 'Basic' tab in the printer driver.</li> <li>Click 'Setting' in the Basic tab of the printer driver.</li> <li>Turn OFF 'Bi-Directional Printing' by un-checking it.</li> <li>(See <i>Bi-Directional Printing</i> on page 14-4.)</li> </ol>
There are some dense lines.	Check 'Reverse Order' in the Basic tab of the printer driver.
Printing is slow.	In the 'Color' tab from the 'Advanced' tab in the printer driver, uncheck the Color Enhancement.
True2Life <sup>®</sup> is not working correctly.	If the image data is not full color in your application (Such as 256 color), True2Life <sup>®</sup> will not work. Please use at least 24 bit color data with the True2Life <sup>®</sup> feature.
'MFC is Busy' or 'MFC Connect Failure' Error Message appears.	Make sure the MFC is not showing an error message on the LCD.
'MFC Connect Failure'	If the MFC is not connected to your PC and you have loaded the Brother software, the PC will show 'MFC Connect Failure' each time you restart Windows <sup>®</sup> . You can ignore this message or you can turn it off by deselecting the <b>AutoLoad PopUp</b> check box in the Brother Control Center chapter. (See <i>How to turn off AutoLoad</i> on page 16-2.)
PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> Difficu	Ities
Removable Disk does not work properly.	<ul> <li>a) Have you installed the Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 update? If not, do the following: <ol> <li>Disconnect the USB cable.</li> <li>Install the Windows 2000<sup>®</sup> update. Please see the Quick Setup Guide. After the installation the PC will be automatically restarted.</li> <li>Wait about 1 minute after you reboot the PC, and then connect the USB cable.</li> <li>Take out the media card and put it back in again.</li> <li>If you have tried "Eject", you must take out the media card before you continue.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d) If an error message appears when you try to eject the media card, it means the card is being accessed. Wait a while and then try again.</li> <li>e) If all of the above do not work, please turn off your PC and MFC, and then turn them on again. (You will have to unplug the power cord of the MFC to turn it off.)</li> </ul>

# How to improve print quality

### Cleaning the print head

To ensure good print quality, the MFC will regularly clean the print head. You can start the cleaning process when needed.

Clean the print head and ink cartridges if you get a horizontal line in the text or graphics on your printed pages. You can clean two colors at a time (BLACK/CYAN or YELLOW/MAGENTA), or all four colors at once.

Cleaning the print head consumes ink. Cleaning too often uses ink unnecessarily.



Do NOT clean the print head by touching it with your hand or a cloth.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 5, 2.
- 2 Press (\*) to select the color you want to clean. Press **Menu/Set**.

The MFC will clean the print head. When cleaning is finished, the MFC will go back online automatically.

If you clean the print head at least five times and the print has not improved, call Brother Customer Service for help at 1-800-284-4329 (in USA), 1-877-BROTHER (in Canada), or (514) 685-6464 (in Montreal).

#### **Print Quality Check**

If the print quality is not good, you can print a Print Quality Check Sheet to help you find the settings you may need to change.

- **1** Press **Menu/Set**, **5**, **1**.
- 2 Press Fax Start. The MFC begins printing the Print Quality Check Sheet.
- MAINTENANCE 1.TEST PRINT

TEST PRINT PRESS FAX START

**3** Check the sheet to see if the quality and alignment are OK by following STEPs A and B.

#### STEP A: Color block quality check

The LCD shows:

IS	STE	ΞP	"A"	OK?
1.3	ΖES	2.	. NO	

- **4** Check the quality of the four color blocks on the sheet. (BLACK/CYAN/YELLOW/MAGENTA).
- 5 If all lines are clear and visible, press 1 (YES) to go to STEP B. —OR—

If you can see missing short lines as shown below, press 2 (NO).

OK Poor

The LCD will ask you if the print quality is OK for each color.

BLACK	OK?
1.YES	2.NO

6 Press 2 (NO) for any color with a problem.
The LCD shows:
Press 1 (YES). The MFC will start cleaning the colors.

START	CLEANING?
1.YES	CLEANING? 2.NO

- 7 After cleaning is finished, press **Fax Start**. The MFC will start printing the Print Quality Check Sheet again and then return to **STEP A**.
- 8 If STEP A is OK, press 1 to proceed to STEP B.

#### **STEP B: Alignment Check**

The LCD shows:

	STE			OK?
1.3	ζES	2.	NO	

- **9** Check the 600 DPI and 1200 DPI test prints to see if number 5 most closely matches number 0. If the number 5 sample of both the 600 DPI and 1200 DPI are the best matches, press **1** (YES) to finish **STEP B**.
  - -OR-

If another test print number is a better match for either 600 DPI or 1200 DPI, press 2 (NO) to select it.

- **10** For 600 DPI, press the number of the test print that most closely matches the number 0 sample (1-8).
- **11** For 1200 DPI, press the number of the test print that most closely matches the number 0 sample (1-8).

600DPI	ADJUST	
SELECT	BEST #	

1200DP1	I ADJI	JST
SELECT	BEST	#

- **12** Repeat Steps 1 and 2 (in *Print Quality Check*) to print another sample Print Quality Check Sheet and then check it.
- 13 Press Stop/Exit.





When an ink head nozzle is clogged the printed sample looks like this.



After the ink head nozzle is cleaned, the horizontal lines are gone.

If you still see missing ink in this Print Quality Check Sheet, repeat the cleaning and test print procedures at least five times. If ink is still missing after the fifth cleaning and test print, replace the ink cartridge for the clogged color. (Perhaps the ink cartridge was in your MFC over six months or the expiration date written on the cartridge package has passed. Or, the ink may not have been stored properly before use.)

After replacing the ink cartridge, check it by printing another Print Quality Check Sheet. If the problem still exists, repeat the cleaning and test print procedures at least five times for the new ink cartridge. If ink is still missing, call Customer Service at 1-800-284-4329 (in USA), 1-877-BROTHER (in Canada) or (514) 685-6464 (in Montreal).

#### Caution

Do NOT touch the print head. Touching the print heads may cause permanent damage and may void the print head's warranty.

# Checking the ink volume

You can check the ink that is left in the cartridge.

- 1 Press Menu/Set, 5, 3.
- 2 Press 🛟 to select the color you want to check.

Press Menu/Set.

The LCD shows the ink volume.

BLACK	
BLACK	

INK VOLUME

#### 3 Press Stop/Exit.

TROUBLESHOOTING AND ROUTINE MAINTENANCE	23 - 13
TROOBLESHOOTING AND ROOTINE MAINTENANCE	23 - 13

# Packing and shipping the MFC

Whenever you transport the MFC, use the packaging that came with it. If you do not pack the MFC properly, you may void your warranty.

## 

Do NOT unplug the MFC after a print job until you hear the final click.

1 Pull the scanner cover release lever and lift the scanner cover.



- **2** Remove all the ink cartridges and attach the protective cartridge covers. (See *Replacing the ink cartridges* on page 23-18.)
- If you are not able to find the protective cartridges, do NOT remove the ink cartridges before shipping. It is essential that the MFC be shipped with either the shipping cover or the ink cartridges in position. Shipping without them will cause damage to your MFC and may void your warranty.

**3** Remove the paper tray from the MFC.



- **4** Unplug the handset and disconnect the curled cord.
- **5** Unplug the MFC from the telephone wall jack (phone socket).
- 6 Unplug the MFC from the AC power outlet.
- 7 Unplug the USB cable from the MFC.
- 8 Remove the telephone line cord, and put all the parts in their original packaging or protective wrapping.
- **9** Wrap the MFC in the plastic bag.



**10** Place the MFC in the original box with the original packaging.



**11** Pack the attachable parts and printed materials in the box. DO NOT pack the used ink cartridges.



- If you are returning the MFC to Brother as part of the Brother Exchange Service, pack only the MFC. Keep all the attachable parts and printed materials to use with your 'Exchange' machine.
- 12 Close the box.

# **Routine maintenance**

#### **Cleaning the scanner**

Lift the document cover. Clean the scanner glass and the white film with isopropyl alcohol on a soft lint-free cloth.



#### Replacing the ink cartridges

Your MFC is equipped with an ink dot counter that automatically monitors the ink level in each color cartridge. When the counter detects an ink cartridge is out of ink, the MFC will notify you with a message INK EMPTY on the LCD.

The LCD shows you which color cartridges are empty. Be sure to follow the LCD prompts so you replace the color cartridges in the appropriate order.

- **1** Pull the scanner cover release lever and lift the scanner cover.
- **2** Lift the output paper support and open the ink cartridge cover.



**3** Remove the ink cartridges that are shown on the LCD.



If one or more ink cartridges are empty, for example Black, the LCD shows INK EMPTY BLACK and PLS OPEN COVER.

**4** Open the new ink cartridge bag for the color shown on the LCD, and then take out the ink cartridge.

**5** Each color has its own correct position. Insert the new ink cartridge into its carriage by pressing until it clicks.



- 6 After installing the ink cartridges, close the ink cartridge cover, output paper support and scanner cover.
- 7 If you replaced an ink cartridge while NEAR EMPTY XXXX was displayed on the LCD, the LCD will ask you to verify that it was a brand new one. Example: DID YOU CHANGE BLCK? 1.YES 2.NO. For each *new* cartridge you installed, press 1 on the dial pad to automatically reset the ink dot counter for that color. If the ink cartridge you installed is not a brand new one, please be sure to select 2.

If you wait until the INK EMPTY XXXX message is displayed on the LCD, the MFC will automatically reset the ink dot counter.



If ink gets in your eyes, irrigate them with water immediately and call a doctor if you are concerned.

#### Caution

- DO NOT remove ink cartridges if you do not need to replace them. If you do so, it may reduce the ink quantity and the printer will not know the quantity of ink left in the cartridge.
- DO NOT shake the ink cartridges, because the ink may spill when you take off the sealing tape.
- If ink stains your body or clothing, wash with soap or detergent immediately.
- If you install an ink cartridge in the wrong color position, you must clean the print head several times before you start printing (after correcting the cartridge installation) because the colors were mixed.
- Once you open an ink cartridge, install it in the MFC and use it up within six months of installation. Use unopened ink cartridges by the expiration date written on the cartridge package.
- Brother strongly recommends that you do not refill the ink cartridges provided with your machine. We also strongly recommend that you continue to use only Genuine Brother Brand replacement ink cartridges. Using or attempting to use potentially incompatible inks and/or cartridges in your machine may cause damage to the machine itself and/or it may result in unsatisfactory print quality. Our warranty coverage does not apply to any problem that was caused by the use of unauthorized third party ink and/or cartridges. To protect your investment and guarantee your print quality please continue to replace consumed ink cartridges with only Genuine Brother Branded Supplies.
- If the INK EMPTY message is on the display after you have installed ink cartridges, check that the ink cartridges are installed correctly.

If you still cannot solve a problem with your MFC, call Brother Customer Service. (See *Brother numbers* on page i.)



- Auto Dial List A listing of names and numbers stored in Speed Dial memory, in numerical order.
- Automatic fax transmission Sending a fax without picking up the handset of the MFC or pressing **Speaker Phone**.
- Automatic Redial A feature that enables your MFC to redial the last fax number if the original fax did not go through because the line was busy.
- Auto Reduction Reduces size of incoming faxes.
- **Batch Transmission** As a cost savings feature, all delayed faxes to the same fax number will be sent as one transmission.
- **Backup Print** Sets your MFC to print a copy of every fax that is received and stored in memory.

This is a safety feature so you will not lose message during a power failure.

- **Beeper** The sound the keys make when they are pressed, an error occurs or a document has been received or transmitted.
- **Beeper volume** Volume setting for the beep when you press a key or make an error.
- **Brightness** Changing the Brightness makes the whole image lighter or darker.
- **Broadcasting** The ability to send the same fax message to more than one location.
- **Cancel Job** Cancels a programmed job, like Delayed Fax or Polling.
- **CNG tones** The special tones (beeps) sent by fax machines during automatic transmission to tell the receiving machine that they are a from fax machine.
- **Communication error (or Comm. Error)** An error during fax sending or receiving, usually caused by line noise or static.

- **Coding Method** Method of coding the information contained in a document. All fax machines must use a minimum standard of Modified Huffman (MH). Your fax machine is capable of greater compression methods, Modified Read (MR), Modified Modified Read (MMR) and Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG), if the receiving machine has the same capability.
- **Compatibility Group** The ability of one fax unit to communicate with another. Compatibility is assured between ITU-T Groups.
- **Contrast** Setting to compensate for dark or light documents, by lightening dark documents or darkening light documents.
- Delayed Fax Sends your fax at a later time that day.
- **Distinctive Ring** A service purchased from the Telephone Company that provides another phone number on an existing phone line. The Brother MFC uses the new number to simulate a dedicated fax line.
- **Dual Access** Your MFC can scan outgoing faxes or scheduled jobs into memory at the same time it is sending a fax or receiving or printing an incoming fax.
- **Easy Receive** Enables your MFC to respond to CNG tones if you interrupt a fax call by answering it.
- **ECM (Error Correction Mode)** Detects errors during fax transmission and resends the page(s) of the document that had an error.
- **Extension phone** A telephone on the fax number that is plugged into a separate wall jack.
- **External phone** A TAD (telephone answering device) or telephone that is plugged into the EXT jack of your MFC.
- **F/T Ring Time** The length of time that the Brother machine rings (when the receive mode setting is FAX/TEL) to notify you to pick up a voice call that it answered.
- **Fax Activity Report** Lists information about the last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. TX means Transmit. RX means Receive.
- **Fax Forwarding** Sends a fax received in memory to another preprogrammed fax number.

- Fax Receive Code Press this code  $(\div 51)$  when you answer a fax call from an extension or external phone.
- **Fax Storage** You can print stored faxes later, or retrieve them from another location using Fax Forwarding, Paging, or Remote Retrieval functions.
- **FAX/TEL** You can receive faxes and telephone calls. Do not use this mode if you are using a telephone answering device (TAD).
- **Fax tones** The signals sent by sending and receiving fax machines while communicating information.
- Fine resolution Resolution is  $196 \times 203$  dpi. It is used for small print and graphs.
- **Gray scale** The shades of gray available for copying and faxing photographs.
- **Group number** A combination of Speed Dial numbers that are stored as a Speed Dial number for Broadcasting.
- **Help list** A printout of the complete Menu that you can use to program your machine when you do not have the User's Guide with you.
- **Interval** The preprogrammed time period between automatically printed Activity Reports. You can print Activity Reports on demand without interrupting this cycle.
- **LCD (liquid crystal display)** The display screen on the MFC that shows interactive messages during On-Screen Programming and shows the date and time when the machine is idle.
- Manual fax When you lift the handset of the MFC or press Speaker Phone so you can hear the receiving fax machine answer before you press Start to begin transmission.
- **Menu mode** Programming mode for changing your machine's settings.
- **Multi-Function Link Pro<sup>®</sup> Suite** Turns your MFC into a printer and a scanner and enables PC faxing using the MFC.
- Near Edge Allows you to reduce unprintable areas.
- **Next Fax Reservation** Dual Access accepts the next original on the scanner glass for transmission while the Memory is full.

- **OCR (optical character recognition)** The bundled ScanSoft<sup>®</sup> TextBridge<sup>®</sup> software application converts an image of text to text you can edit.
- **Out of Paper Reception** Receives faxes into the MFC's memory when the machine is out of paper.
- **Overseas Mode** Makes temporary changes to the fax tones to accommodate noise and static on overseas phone lines.
- **Paging** Feature enables your fax unit to call your pager when a fax is received into its memory.
- **Pause** Allows you to place a 3.5 second delay in the dialing sequence stored on Speed Dial numbers.
- PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> Allows you to print digital photos from your digital camera at high resolution for photo quality printing.
- **Photo resolution** A resolution setting that uses varying shades of gray for the best representation of photographs.
- **Polling** The process of a fax machine calling another fax machine to retrieve waiting fax messages.
- Printer alarm Audible alarm when the printer is not able to print.
- Pulse A form of rotary dialing on a telephone line.
- **Real Time Transmission** When memory is full, you can send documents in real time.
- **Remaining jobs** You can check which jobs are waiting in memory and cancel jobs individually.
- **Remote Activation** Allows you to transfer a fax call, answered at an external or extension phone, to the MFC.
- **Remote Retrieval Access** The ability to access your MFC remotely from a touch tone phone.
- **Remote Access Code** Your own four-digit code (--- \*) that allows you to call and access your MFC from a remote location.
- **Resolution** The number of vertical and horizontal lines per inch. See: Standard, Super Fine and Photo.
- **Ring Delay** The number of rings before the MFC answers in FAX mode.

Ring Volume Volume setting for the MFC's ring.

G-4 GLOSSARY

- **Scanning** The process of sending an electronic image of an original paper document into your computer.
- **Scan to Card** You can scan a black and white or color original into a Media Card. Black and white images will be in TIFF file format and color images may be in PDF or JPEG file format.
- **Search** An electronic, alphabetical listing of stored Speed Dial and Group numbers.
- **Speed Dial** A preprogrammed number for easy dialing. You must press the **Search/Speed Dial** key and then **#**, two digit code to start the dialing process.
- **Standard resolution** 97 x 203 dpi. It is used for regular size text and quickest transmission.
- **Station ID** The stored information that appears on the top of faxed pages. It includes the sender's name and fax number.
- **Super fine resolution** 392 x 203 dpi. Best for very small print and line art.
- **TAD (telephone answering device)** You can connect an external TAD to the EXT. jack of the MFC.
- **Telephone Answer Code (FAX/TEL mode only)** When the machine answers a voice call, it pseudo/double-ring. You can pick up at an extension phone by pressing this code (**# 5 1**).
- **Temporary Settings** You can select certain options for each fax transmission without changing the default settings.
- **Tone** A form of dialing on the telephone line used for Touch Tone telephones.
- **Transmission** The process of sending documents over the phone lines from your MFC to the receiving fax machine.
- **Transmission Verification Report** A listing of each transmission, that shows its date, time and number.
- **True2Life**<sup>®</sup> Adjusts the color in the image for better print quality by improving sharpness, white balance and color density.
- **User Settings** A printed report that shows the current settings of your MFC.



# **Product description**

The MFC-4820C is a 7in1 Multi-Function Center: Color Printer, Color Copier, Color Scanner, Message Center, Plain Paper Color Fax, PhotoCapture Center<sup>™</sup> and PC Fax Sending (via your PC).

# General

Memory Capacity	16MB
Paper Tray	Up to 100 Sheets (20 lb)
Printer Type	Ink Jet
Print Method	Piezo with 75 x 4 nozzles
LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)	16 characters x 2 Lines, Backlight
Operating Environment	50-95 °F (10-35 °C)
Best Print Quality	68-91 °F (20-33 °C)
Power Source	120V AC 50/60Hz (USA and Canadian Version Only)
Power Consumption	Standby: under 9.7 watts Operating: under 22 watts

Dimensions



Weight

18.3 lb / 8.3 kg (with components)
# **Print media**

Paper Input	<ul> <li>Paper Tray</li> <li>Paper type: Plain paper, inkjet paper (coated paper), glossy paper, transparencies and envelopes</li> <li>Paper size: Letter, Legal, A5, Executive, envelopes (commercial No. 10, DL, C5), Post card, Index card. Width: 3.2-8.5" (89-216 mm) Height: 5.0-14" (127-356 mm) For more details, see Paper Specifications for Paper Tray on page 2-2.</li> <li>Maximum paper tray capacity: Approx. 100 sheets of 20 lb (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>) plain paper.</li> </ul>	
Paper Output	Up to 30 sheets of plain paper (Face up print delivery to the outpup paper support) To prevent smearing the ink, we recommend removing printed pages from the output paper support immediately after they exit the MFC.	
Сору		
Color/Mono	Color/Mono	
Copy Speed	Mono Up to 10 pages/minute (Letter paper)* Color Up to 6 pages/minute (Letter paper)* * Does not include the time it takes to feed the paper.	
Enlarge/Reduce	25% to 400% (in increments of 1%)	
Resolution	Print: Max. 1200 x 1200 dpi Scan: Max. 600 x 600 dpi	

# **Photo Capture Center**

Available Media	CompactFlash <sup>®</sup> (Microdrive <sup>™</sup> is not compatible) (Compact I/O card such as Compact LAN card and Compact Modem card are not available.) SmartMedia <sup>®</sup> (3.3V) (Not available for use with ID) Memory Stick <sup>®</sup> (Not available for music data with MagicGate)
File Extension	JPEG (Progressive JPEG format is not available)
Number of Files	Up to 999 files in the media card
Folder	File must be in the 3rd stratum of the folder of Media Card

# Fax

Compatibility	ITU-T Group 3	
Coding System	Mono: MH/MR/MMR Color: JPEG	
Modem Speed	14400 bps Automatic Fallback	
Original Size	Scanner Width: Max. 8.5" (216 mm) Scanner Height: Max. 11.7" (297 mm)	
Scanning Width	8.2 inches (208 mm)	
Printing Width	8.03 inches (204 mm)	
Gray Scale	Mono: 64 Color: 256 levels (Error Diffusion)	
Polling Types	Standard, Sequential: B&W only	
Contrast Control	Automatic/Super Light/Super Dark (manual setting)	
Resolution	<ul> <li>Horizontal 203 dot/inch (8 dot/mm)</li> <li>Vertical Standard - 98 line/inch (Black) (3.85 line/mm) 196 line/inch (Color) (7.7 line/mm)</li> <li>Fine -196 line/inch (Black/Color) (7.7 line/mm)</li> <li>Photo - 196 line/inch (Black) (7.7 line/mm)</li> <li>Superfine - 392 line/inch (Black) (15.4 line/mm)</li> </ul>	
Speed Dial	80 stations	
Broadcasting	Up to 130 locations; Up to 6 Groups	
Automatic Redial	one time after 5 minutes	
Auto Answer	0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 rings	
Speaker Type	Full Duplex, Digital	
Communication Source	Public switched telephone network	
Memory Transmission	Up to 480 pages *	
Out of Paper Reception	Up to 480 pages *	

\* "Pages" refers to the "Brother Standard Chart No. 1" (a typical business letter, Standard resolution, MMR code). Specifications and printed materials are subject to change without prior notice.

# Scanner

Color/Mono	Color/Mono
TWAIN Compliant	Yes
Resolution	Up to 9,600 $\times$ 9,600 dpi (interpolated) Up to 600 $\times$ 2,400 dpi (optical)
Scanning Speed	Color: up to 11 sec. Mono: up to 3 sec. * Letter size in 100 × 100 dpi
Document Size	Scanner Width: Max. 8.5" (216 mm) Scanner Height: Max. 11.7" (297 mm)
Scanning Width	8.2 inches (208 mm)
Gray Scale	256 levels

# **Printer**

Printer Driver	Windows <sup>®</sup> 98/98SE/Me/2000 Professional and XP driver supporting Brother Native Compression mode and bi-directional capability Apple <sup>®</sup> Macintosh <sup>®</sup> QuickDraw <sup>®</sup> Driver For OS 8.6-9.2/OS X 10.1/10.2.1 or greater
Resolution	2400 x 1200 dots per inch (DPI) 1200 x 1200 dots per inch (DPI) 600 x 600 dots per inch (DPI) 600 x 300 dots per inch (DPI) 600 x 150 dots per inch (DPI)
Print Speed	up to 13 pages/minute (Grayscale) up to 11 pages/minute (Color)
Printing Width	8.03 inches (204 mm)
Near Edge	approximately 0.02 in. margins (A4/LTR/4x6 Post card/5x8 Index card) (Not available for transparencies)
Disk-Based Fonts	35 TrueType

Specifications and printed materials are subject to change without prior notice.

# Interface

USB

A Standard Universal Serial Bus cable that is not longer than 6 feet (1.8m). (USB cable not included)

# **Computer Requirements**

Minimum System Requirements						
Computer Platform &		Processor	Minimum	Recommended	Available Hard Disk Space	
Operating Sy	ystem Version	Minimum Speed	RAM	RAM	Drivers + ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> SW	ArcSoft <sup>®</sup> SW
Windows <sup>®</sup> Operating	98, 98SE	Pentium 75MHz	24 MB	32 MB	150 MB	150 MB
System	Me	Pentium 150MHz	32 MB	64 MB	-	
	2000 Professional	Pentium 133MHz	64 MB	128 MB		
	ХР	Pentium 233MHz			280 MB	
Apple <sup>®</sup> Macintosh <sup>®</sup> Operating System	OS 8.6 - 9.2 (Printing, Scanning and PC-FAX sending only)	All base models meet minimum Requirements	32 MB	64 MB	50 MB	200 MB
	OS X 10.1 (Printing and Remote Setup only)					
	Mac OS X 10.2.1 or greater (Printing, Scanning, PC-FAX sending and Remote Setup only)		128 MB	160 MB		
NOTE: All registered trademarks referenced herein are the property of their respective companies.						
For the lates	t drivers, access the	Brother Solution	s Center at ht	tp://solutions.	brother.com	

# **Consumable Items**

Ink

Service Life of Ink Cartridge Black and 3 individual color ink cartridges separate from the print heads.

Approximately 480 page/Black cartridge at 5% coverage with 600 x 150 dpi resolution (Fast).

Approximately 400 page/Color cartridge at 5% coverage with 600 x 150 dpi resolution (Fast).



These numbers are based on consecutive printing; the numbers will vary based on print frequency and number of pages. The MFC periodically cleans the print head to maintain print quality. This process consumes a small amount of ink.

# Index

The items in the upper case represent LCD messages.

### Α

access codes, storing and
dialing7-4
accessories and suppliesii
automatic
dialing7-4
fax receive5-1
fax redial6-7

#### В

Broadcasting6-11
setting up Groups for7-3
Brother
accessories and suppliesii
Brother numbersi
Customer Servicei
fax back systemii
Frequently Asked Questions
(FAQs)i
product supporti
test sheet, sending1-2
Warrantiesiii, iv, vi
Brother Control Center
using and configuring16-1

## С

CALL PICKUP5-13
Caller ID5-13, 5-14
canceling
a scheduled fax job6-10
fax forwarding8-6
paging8-6
while scanning a fax6-10
cleaning
print head23-9
scanner23-17

CNG tones1-9
computer requirements S-5
connecting
external TAD1-11
external telephone1-11
consumable items S-5
control panel, overview1-6
сору
brightness11-8
color adjustment11-13
contrast11-12
default settings11-11
enlarging11-6
keys11-3
multiple11-2
paper11-7
quality 11-5, 11-12
reducing11-6
scanner glass11-2
single11-2
specificationsS-2
temporary settings11-3
Credit Card Numbers7-4
custom telephone features

#### D

Date and Time4-2
Delayed Batch Transmission
6-15
Delayed Fax6-14
dialing
a pause7-5
access codes and credit card
numbers7-4
automatic fax redial6-7

Groups	6-11
Distinctive Ring	5-10
drivers	
Macintosh	21-1
printer	14-1
TWAIN Compliant	15-1
Dual Access	6-8

## Е

Easy Receive	. 5-5
ECM (Error Correction Mode	e)
	1-10
entering text	. 4-4
envelopes 2-2	, 2-4
error messages on LCD 1	23-1
BLCK 1. YES 2. NO 2	3-19
CHECK PAPER	23-1
COMM. ERROR	23-1
DID YOU CHANGE 2	3-19
INK EMPTY	23-2
MEMORY FULL	23-2
NOT REGISTERED	23-2
OUT OF MEMORY	
while scanning	
a document 6-8,	11-2
extension telephone, using	
external telephone	
•	

## F

codes	
Fax Receive Code	5-5
fax codes	
Fax Receive Code	5-7
Remote Access Code	8-4
Telephone Answer Code	5-7
Fax Forwarding	8-2
changing remotely 8-6,	8-8
programming a number	8-2
Fax Receive Code 5-7,	5-8

Fax Storage	8-1
Backup Print	
Fax Forwarding/Paging	
printing from	
turning on	
fax, stand-alone	
receiving	5-1
at end of conversation	
difficulty2	
erasing from the memory	
forwarding8-2,	
polling1-16,	
reducing to fit on paper	
retrieving from a remote	
site	8-8
ring delay, setting	
sending	
at end of conversation	6-4
color fax	
contrast	
delayed6	
from memory (Dual Acce	
manual transmission	
multiple settings	
overseas6	
polling6	
Real Time Transmission	
redialing	
resolution	
specifications	
FAX/TEL mode	
Announcement9-2,	
answering at extension	51
phones	5_7
double-ringing (voice calls)	
FAX Receive Code	5_8
receiving faxes	
100011111 1axes	5-7

fax

Setting F/T Ring Time	5-4
Setting Ring Delay	5-3
Telephone Answer Code	5-7
FCC notices	. 22-1

#### G

gray scale .....S-3, S-4 Groups for Broadcasting .....7-3

## Н

Hearing aid compatible
HELP
Hold7-8

#### L.

ink cartridges	
checking ink volume	23-13
replacing	23-18
interface specification	S-4

#### J

jacks	
convert to RJ11 jack	1-14
EXT. jack	
external telephone	1-11
TAD (answering machin	e)
	1-11
triplex adapter	1-14

#### L

LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)
contrast4-10

#### Μ

Macintosh® G3, G4 or	
or iBook <sup>™</sup>	21-1
maintenance, routine	23-17

manual	
receive5	5-1
transmission6	6-3
Manual Dialing7	<b>'</b> -7
Memory Storage	3-1
Menu mode	
Message Center mode9	)-1
erasing messages	
playing voice messages9	
printing faxes from memory	
	)-4
recording a conversation9	
recording FAX/TEL	
announcement (F/T OGM)	
ç	)-7
recording outgoing message	9
(MSG ČTR ŎĠM)	
setting up 9-1, 9	
Toll Saver5	
multi-line connections (PBX)	-

																																						4	1		1	7	l
																												-		-										-	L	1	
	-	•	-	•	-	•	•	-	•	-	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	-	•	•		1		•		

#### Ν

Near E	dge	
Print		14-6

#### 0

Options key (copying)	
Brightness	11-8
Paper Size	11-8
Paper Type	11-7
OUT OF AREA	5-13
Outgoing Message (MSG	CTR
OGM)	9-2

#### Ρ

Paging 8-2, 8-3
programming your pager
number8-2
Paper2-1, S-2

capacity	2-2
Size	4-2
Туре	4-1
PaperPort <sup>®</sup>	
accessing	. 15-2
exporting	15-24
importing	15-23
uninstall	15-24
PC FAX (For Windows®)	. 19-1
sending	
address book	
cover page	
facsimile style	
group	
setting up	19-12
simple style	19-15
phone line	
connections	
difficulties	
multi-line (PBX)	
roll-over lines	
two-line phone system	. 1-14
PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup>	
CompactFlash <sup>®</sup>	. 12-1
DPOF printing Memory Stick <sup>®</sup>	12-14
Memory Stick <sup>®</sup>	. 12-1
Printing images	
Printing Index	
SmartMedia <sup>®</sup>	
specifications	S-2
Polling	
receiving	
sending	
sequential receiving	5-9
power	
failure	3-1
print	
area	
difficulty	. 23-6
fax from memory	5-8

Improving quality	23-9
jams	23-3
media	S-2
resolution	S-4
specifications	S-4

### Q

Quality key	(copying)		
		11-3	11-5

### R

Receive mode	
EXTERNAL TAD	5-1
FAX ONLY	5-1
FAX/TEL	5-1
MANUAL	
Redial/Pause	
reducing	
copies1	1-6
long faxes	5-6
Remote Retrieval	8-5
access code8-4,	8-5
changing the code	
commands	
getting your faxes	8-8
Reports1	
Transmission Verification	
	0-1
resolution	
fax (Standard, Fine,	
SuperFine, Photo)	S-3
print	
Scan 1	
setting for next fax	
Ring Delay, setting	
Thing Delay, Setting	0-0

#### S

Safety Instructions	vii, 22-5
scanner	
specifications	S-4

Scanning into PC15-3 ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> PaperPort <sup>®</sup> 15-20
ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> TextBridge <sup>®</sup>
OCR
Setup
Date and Time4-2
Station ID (fax header)4-3
software
Brother Control Center 16-1
ScanSoft <sup>®</sup> Paper Port <sup>®</sup> 15-20
Speed Dial1-6
changing7-2
storing7-1

## Т

TAD (Telephone Answering
Device), external
1-11, 1-16, 5-1
connecting1-11
receive mode5-1
Temporary Copy Settings 11-3
text, entering4-4
Special Characters
Toll Saver
Tone Signals on Pulse Line 7-5
troubleshooting
error messages on LCD 23-1
if you are having difficulty
incoming Calls23-7
phone line difficulty23-7
printer difficulties23-7
printing or receiving faxes
sending faxes23-7
True2Life <sup>®</sup>
PhotoCapture Center <sup>™</sup> 12-17
•
Print
two-line phone system1-14

#### V

Volume, setting	4-6
beeper	4-6
ring	4-6
speaker	4-7
volume, setting	
handset	4-8
amplify (for	
hearing-impaired)	4-9

#### W

Warrantiesiii
Canadavi
Notice-Disclaimeriii
USAiv
World Wide Webi

# **Remote Retrieval Access Card**

If you plan to retrieve voice or fax messages while away from your MFC, carrying the Remote Retrieval Access Card printed below will serve as a convenient reminder of the retrieval procedures. Simply cut out the card and fold it to fit in your wallet or organizer. Keeping it handy will help you derive the full benefit of your MFC's Forwarding, Paging and Remote Retrieval features.





# EQUIPMENT ATTACHMENT LIMITATIONS (Canada only)

#### NOTICE

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications.

#### NOTICE

The Ringer Equivalence Number is an indication of the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination on an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five.



Brother International Corporation 100 Somerset Corporate Boulevard P.O. Box 6911 Bridgewater, NJ 08807–0911 USA

Brother International Corporation (Canada) Ltd. 1 rue Hôtel de Ville, Dollard-des-Ormeaux, QC, CANADA H9B 3H6

#### Visit us on the World Wide Web http://www.brother.com

These machines are made for use in the USA and CANADA only. We cannot recommend using them overseas because it may violate the Telecommunications Regulations of that country and the power requirements of your multi-function center may not be compatible with the power available in foreign countries. **Using USA or CANADA models overseas is at your own risk and may void your warranty.**